## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acknowledgements</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Starter unit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How to use a unit</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to learn new words</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to do the exercises</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations and symbols</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Basic English

1. I can understand and say numbers           | 14   |
2. I can tell the time                        | 15   |
3. I can say days and dates                   | 16   |
4. I can say countries and nationalities      | 18   |
5. I can use classroom vocabulary             | 20   |
6. I can use English language words           | 21   |
7. I can ask and answer questions about language | 22   |

**Review**                                     | 23   |

### People

8. I can give personal information            | 26   |
9. I can fill in a form                       | 27   |
10. I can talk about my family                | 28   |
11. I can describe physical actions           | 30   |
12. I can name parts of the body              | 32   |
13. I can describe people                     | 33   |
14. I can talk about character                | 36   |
15. I can describe relationships              | 38   |
16. I can say how I feel                      | 40   |

**Review**                                     | 42   |
## Everyday life

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>I can describe my routine</td>
<td>46</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>I can talk about clothes</td>
<td>49</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>I can buy clothes</td>
<td>51</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>I can talk about money</td>
<td>54</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>I can talk about the weather</td>
<td>56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>I can talk about illness</td>
<td>58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>I can get help at the chemist's</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Food and drink

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>I can name meat and fish</td>
<td>65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>I can name fruit and vegetables</td>
<td>66</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>I can buy food in a shop</td>
<td>68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>I can order in a café</td>
<td>71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>I can order in a restaurant</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Getting around

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>I can get around on buses</td>
<td>78</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>I can get around on trains</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>I can ask for and give directions</td>
<td>82</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>I can talk about roads and traffic</td>
<td>84</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>I can understand signs and notices</td>
<td>86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Places

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>I can talk about my country</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>I can talk about my town</td>
<td>91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>I can describe the countryside</td>
<td>94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>I can talk about shops</td>
<td>96</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>I can talk about my home</td>
<td>98</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>I can describe a kitchen</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>I can describe a bedroom and bathroom</td>
<td>102</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>I can describe a living room</td>
<td>104</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Study and work

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>I can talk about my school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>I can talk about university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>I can name jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>I can describe a job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>I can talk about using a computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>I can use email and the internet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Hobbies and interests

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>I can say what I like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>I can talk about sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>I can talk about my free time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>I can talk about music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>I can talk about films</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>I can talk about the media</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Holidays

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>I can arrange a holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>I can book a hotel room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>I can communicate in an airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>I can describe a beach holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>I can describe a sightseeing holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>I can use the bank and post office</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Review

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Social English

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>I can meet and greet people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>I can use special greetings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>I can ask for information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>I can ask for things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>I can invite people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>I can make suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>I can offer, accept, and refuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>I can say sorry and respond</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Language

70 I can use common adjectives 172
71 I can use common adverbs 174
72 I can use irregular verbs 176
73 I can use phrasal verbs 178
74 I can use prepositions of time 180
75 I can use time words and phrases 181
76 I can use prepositions of place and movement 183
77 I can use link words (1) 186
78 I can use link words (2) 188
79 I can use ‘have’ and ‘have got’ 190
80 I can use ‘get’ 192

Review 193
Acknowledgements

The authors and publishers would like to thank teachers and students from the following schools who helped with the development of this book:

- International House, Business English Centre, Madrid, Spain
- Shamrock School of English, Getxo, Bizkaia, Spain
- English Language Institute, Macarena, Seville, Spain
- English Centre, Valencia, Spain
- Tti School of English, London, UK
- Bell International, London, UK
- Mark Appleton, Mark Lloyd and the students at International House, Bath, UK
- Małgorzata Salomądry, Dorota Brach, Anna Wnuk and Iza Algermissen in Poland

They would also like to thank Scott Thornbury and Rachel Dudley.

ABOUT YOU answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

- Andreas Schmidt (Germany)
- Ayumi Whitehouse (Japan)
- Funda Bolat (Turkey)
- Esteban Cichello Hubner (Argentina)
- Anna Anagnostopoulou (Greece)
- László Rézműves (Hungary)
- Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman (UK)
- Marcelo Ritter (Brazil)
- Jung Hyang Oh (South Korea)
Introduction

What is Oxford Word Skills?

Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn, practise and revise new vocabulary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>elementary and pre-intermediate (CEF levels A1 and A2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced</td>
<td>advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 80 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are between one and three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of five to ten units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:

- vocabulary building tables
- an answer key for all the exercises
- a list of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where the item appears

There is a CD-ROM at each level with oral pronunciation models for all the vocabulary taught, and further practice exercises, including listening activities.

What vocabulary is included?

At Basic level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, using the phone
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions of place, phrasal verbs

There is a particular emphasis on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English. This is continued at Intermediate level with the addition of more vocabulary from different styles of written English. At Advanced level, learners encounter more figurative meanings of vocabulary items as well as more idiomatic language.

The series includes almost all of the words in the Oxford 3000TM which lists the 3,000 words teachers and students should prioritize in their teaching and learning. The list is based on frequency and usefulness to learners, and was developed by Oxford University Press using corpus evidence and information supplied by a panel of over 70 experts in the fields of teaching and language study. In addition, we have included a wide range of high frequency phrases, e.g. at the moment, never mind, as well as items which are extremely useful in a particular context, e.g. main course in a restaurant, or hand luggage at an airport.
We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple glossary definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to an appropriate learner's dictionary for information on other meanings. (See How to learn new words in the Starter unit for advice.)

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through visuals, tables or different types of text, including dialogues. The meaning of new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying mini-glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Particularly important items are highlighted by means of 'spotlight' boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the presentation for 5-10 minutes (longer if necessary).
- You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.
- Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.
- When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.
- When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary using the cover card enclosed with the book. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new items while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.
- After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.
- You will often notice the headings 'About you' or 'About your country'. These indicate personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pair work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world.

How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If working alone, learners should look at the Starter unit first. For self-study, we recommend that learners use the book alongside the CD-ROM, as it gives them a pronunciation model for every item of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. They can check their own answers and use the cover card to test themselves. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge.
**Starter**

**A How to use a unit**

Study the new words. They are usually in **bold type**.

You can listen to the words on the CD-ROM and practise the pronunciation. Or you can look at the wordlist (page 235) to find out how to say the words.

Sometimes a glossary explains the new words.

A ‘spotlight’ tells you about important words.

Do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (page 203).

---

**27 I can order in a café**

Do Unit 26 first

---

**Spotlight**

Yes, please? and Yes, please.

---

**Glossary**

- **customer**: a person who buys things in a shop.
- **please**: I'd like... I would like... I would like to drink... I'd like to have... I'd like a glass of milk/water/coffee...
- **minute**: a small unit of time (1/60 of an hour).
- **cup**: a small container that holds liquid (usually coffee).
- **cup of coffee**: a small container that holds liquid (usually coffee).
- **a couple of minutes**: a short time (usually less than 5 minutes).
- **a seat**: a place to sit.
- **a seat please**: a place to sit.
- **a ham sandwich**: a sandwich with ham.
- **a toasted sandwich**: a sandwich that is toasted.
- **a cappuccino**: a coffee drink with milk.
- **two coffees**: two cups of coffee.
- **a couple of minutes**: a short time (usually less than 5 minutes).
- **a seat please**: a place to sit.
- **a seat please**: a place to sit.
- **OK**: fine.

---

**Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.**

Use the cover card to test yourself.

There’s more practice in the review units and on the CD-ROM.
B How to learn new words

- Repeat the words two or three times to help you remember them.

- Use a coloured pen to help you remember difficult words.

- Write down new words in a notebook. Write the meaning in English or your own language, or draw a picture.

- Make the names of vegetables from the letters.

- Write the words in sentences. Say them to yourself.

- You can do the exercises in the review units, or the CD-ROM exercises, after each unit. Or do them a month later to test yourself, perhaps after you’ve studied all the units in that module (e.g. Basic English).

- Look at the vocabulary building tables at the back of the book (pages 199 to 201).

- Go to the website (www.oup.com/elt/wordskills) for links to more practice and other useful websites.

- Use a pencil. Check your answers, then rub them out and do them again a week later.

- Buy a good dictionary for your level. The Oxford Essential Dictionary (Oxford University Press) is very good for elementary and pre-intermediate learners.
How to do the exercises

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tick</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underline</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross out</td>
<td>-word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circle</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>'2 + 2 = 4' is right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>'2 + 2 = 5' is wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>If something is a mistake, it's wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e.g. English (The 'I' is a mistake.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>Make something right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e.g. English (wrong) English (right)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>e.g. London is in England. That's true.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>e.g. Paris is in Italy. That's false. It's in France.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the same</td>
<td>e.g. Small and little are the same. (small = little)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>e.g. Big and small are different. (They're not the same.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>match</td>
<td>Find something that you can put with another thing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e.g.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 I'm from <em>a</em> music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 I can speak <em>b</em> Japan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 I like <em>c</em> English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>missing</td>
<td>If something is missing, it is not there.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e.g. He comes New York.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The word from is missing. (He comes from New York.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cover</td>
<td>Put one thing over another thing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>This is a table:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>column</td>
<td>The table has two columns: a column for 'words' and a column for 'meanings'.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test yourself. Look at the words and cover the meaning. Can you remember the meaning?
### Abbreviations and Symbols

**OPP** opposite. Old is the **opposite** of young.

**SYN** synonym: a word that means the same as another word, e.g. *small = little*

**INF** informal. If a word or phrase is **informal**, you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know very well. The opposite is **formal**. If a word or phrase is **formal**, you use it at important and serious times with people you don't know very well, or in written English.

etc. You use **etc.** at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren't going to say them all.

e.g. for example: *Fruit. e.g. apples and bananas.*

**U** uncountable noun. These nouns have no plural form and can't be used with *a* or *an.*

**PT** past tense (past simple form of an irregular verb)

**PP** past participle

### Vowels

- **i:** see /si:/
- **i** happy /'hapı:/
- **ı** sit /stı/
- **e** ten /ten/
- **æ** hat /hæt/
- **o:** father /ˈfa:ðə(r)/
- **ɒ** got /gɒt/
- **ɔ:** saw /so:/
- **u:** put /pʊt/
- **u:** casual /ˈkæʒʊəl/
- **u:** too /tuː/  
- **ʌ:** cup /kʌp/  
- **ɜ:** bird /bɜ:d/  
- **ə:** about /əˈbaʊt/  
- **eə:** go /ɡəʊ/  
- **aɪ:** live /laɪv/  
- **əʊ:** now /naʊ/  
- **oɪ:** boy /boɪ/  
- **əɪ:** near /noʊ(r)/  
- **eə:** hair /hɑː(r)/  
- **ʊ:** sure /ʃʊr(r)/

### Consonants

- **p** pen /pen/  
- **b** bad /bæd/  
- **t** tea /tiː/  
- **d** did /dɪd/  
- **k** cat /kæt/  
- **g** got /ɡɒt/  
- **ʧ** cheap /tʃeɑ̌p/  
- **dʒ** jam /dʒæm/  
- **f** fall /fæl/  
- **v** verb /vɜːb/  
- **θ** thin /θɪhn/  
- **ð** this /ðɪs/  
- **s** so /səʊ/  
- **z** zero /ˈzɜrʊəʊ/  
- **ʃ** shoe /ʃuː/  
- **ʒ** television /ˈtelɪvɪʒn, tɛlɪˈvɪʒn/  
- **h** hat /hæt/  
- **m** map /mæp/  
- **n** no /noʊ/  
- **ŋ** sing /sɪŋ/  
- **l** leg /leg/  
- **r** red /red/  
- **j** yes /jɪs/  
- **w** wet /wɛt/  

---

**STARTER 13**
# I can understand and say numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>one</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eleven</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>fourteen</td>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>sixteen</td>
<td>seventeen</td>
<td>eighteen</td>
<td>nineteen</td>
<td>twenty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>twenty-one</td>
<td>twenty-two</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>forty</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>sixty</td>
<td>seventy</td>
<td>eighty</td>
<td>ninety</td>
<td>a/hundred and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>1,050</td>
<td>1,250</td>
<td>2,000</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>2,000,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a/hundred and one</td>
<td>a/hundred and forty</td>
<td>two hundred</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousand and fifty</td>
<td>one thousand two hundred and fifty</td>
<td>two thousand</td>
<td>one hundred thousand</td>
<td>one million</td>
<td>two million</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In large numbers (over 999), write a comma (,) between thousands and hundreds, e.g. 11,000, and between millions and thousands, e.g. 3,000,000.

1. **Correct the mistakes.**
   - thirty one: **thirty-one**
   - two hundreds: **two hundred**
   - three hundred forty: **three hundred and forty**
   - twenty two: **twenty-two**
   - 42500: **forty-two thousand five hundred**
   - two thousand three hundred fifty: **two thousand three hundred and fifty**

2. **Write the middle number in words.**
   - 24: **twenty-four**
   - 5: **five**
   - 118: **one hundred and eighteen**
   - 26: **twenty-six**
   - 7: **seven**
   - 9: **nine**
   - 243: **two hundred and forty-three**
   - 19: **nineteen**
   - 21: **twenty-one**
   - 7999: **seven thousand nine hundred and ninety-nine**
   - 66: **sixty-six**
   - 68: **sixty-eight**
   - 8: **eight**
   - 5055: **five thousand fifty-five**
   - 51: **fifty-one**
   - 49: **forty-nine**

3. **Write the number in words using **about**.**
   - sixty-eight people: **about seventy people**
   - ninety-seven euros: **ninety-seven euros**
   - nine students: **nine students**
   - thirty-one years: **thirty-one years**
   - four hundred and ninety: **four hundred and ninety**
   - one thousand nine hundred and ninety: **one thousand nine hundred and ninety**
   - seventy-eight people: **seventy-eight people**
   - two hundred and forty-nine thousand: **two hundred and forty-nine thousand**
   - nine hundred and eighty thousand: **nine hundred and eighty thousand**

4. **Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and say the numbers.**
A Telling the time

What's the time?

It's four o'clock. It's five past six.

It's quarter past four. It's twenty past six.

It's half past four. It's twenty to seven.

It's quarter to five. It's three minutes to seven.

It's four fifteen. It's six forty.

It's four forty-five. It's six fifty-seven.

What time is it?

Use minutes with to and past when the number of minutes is not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five, e.g. three minutes past six not three past six.

B Giving more information

9 a.m. nine o'clock in the morning
12.00 p.m. midday
5 p.m. five o'clock in the afternoon
7 p.m. seven o'clock in the evening
7.57 nearly/almost eight o'clock
8.02 just after eight
11.30 p.m. eleven thirty at night
12.00 a.m. midnight

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

1 2.30
2 8.45
3 3.00
4 6.32
5 11.45
6 8.43
7 2.17
8 12.03

D 12.00 at night
D 4.00 in the afternoon
D nearly 6.30
D 11.45 at night
D nearly quarter to nine
D quarter past two
D just after midday
D three o'clock

5 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1 When do banks open in your country?
2 Do they close at midday?
3 What time do shops close?
4 What time do bars open?
5 What time do they close?
6 When do post offices open and close?
### A Days, months, and seasons

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>days of the week</th>
<th>Monday</th>
<th>Tuesday</th>
<th>Wednesday</th>
<th>Thursday</th>
<th>Friday</th>
<th>Saturday</th>
<th>Sunday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>months of the year</td>
<td>January</td>
<td>February</td>
<td>March</td>
<td>April</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>June</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seasons (in Britain)</td>
<td>spring (March – May)</td>
<td>summer (June – August)</td>
<td>autumn (September – November)</td>
<td>winter (December – February)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special days</td>
<td>Christmas Day (25 December)</td>
<td>New Year’s Day (1 January)</td>
<td>your birthday (the day you were born)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight** **Capital letters**

Days and months have a capital letter.

Monday **NOT** monday, January **NOT** january.

1. Put the words in the correct order. Write the number in the box.

   1. Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ Monday ☑ Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐
   2. autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐
   3. December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐ October ☐
      April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

2. Write the next day, month or season.

   - May ☐ June ☐
   - Sunday ☐ Monday ☐
   - 1 Monday ☐
   - 2 August ☐
   - 3 spring ☐
   - 4 November ☐
   - 5 Friday ☐
   - 6 March ☐
   - 7 January ☐
   - 8 autumn ☐
   - 9 Wednesday ☐
   - 10 July ☐

3. **ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY** Write your answers or ask another student.

   1. Which month is your birthday?
   2. Which season do you like best? Why?
   3. Which day of the week do you like best? Why?
   4. What do you do on New Year’s Day?
   5. What are two other special days in the year, and when are they?

4. Test yourself. Cover the days, months and seasons, and say or write them.
B Ordinal numbers and dates

Complete the words.

1. ni_th
2. th_rd
3. twen_teth
4. fi_th
5. eig_th
6. si_teenth
7. fo_reenth
8. th_reenth
9. s_cond

Look at the calendar. Answer the questions. Write the dates as we say them.

When's ...
- the first Saturday in March? March the third, or The third of March.
- the second Tuesday in April?
- the second Wednesday in April?
- the first Sunday in March?
- the first Friday in April?
- the third Tuesday in April?
- the fifth Saturday in March?
- the third Wednesday in March?
- the fourth Monday in April?

Write the dates or years as we say them.

6.9 The sixth of September, or September the sixth.

Spotlight
Saying and writing dates

We can write the date like this:
10 March or 10th March or 3.10.08 or 3/10/08

We say the date like this:
What's the date today? ~ It's March the tenth.
~ It's the tenth of March.

Say the year like this:
1980 nineteen eighty 1995 nineteen ninety-five
2006 two thousand and six 2020 twenty twenty
### Where are you from? Where do you come from?

#### I come from ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area in the world</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality (Language)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td>The Czech Republic</td>
<td>Czech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>Polish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss (German, French, Italian)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>Indian (Hindi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia/The Far East</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese (Mandarin, Cantonese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>South Korea</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Canadian (English, French)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>American (English)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central America</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican (Spanish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South America</td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinian (Spanish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian (Portuguese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Middle East</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Egyptian (Arabic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australasia</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian (English)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same, e.g. Czech is the nationality and the language. Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from Mexico are Mexican, but they speak Spanish. Countries, nationalities, and languages begin with capital letters: Japan not Japan.

---

**spotlight People from a country**

To talk about people from a country, we often add 's' to the nationality, e.g. Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks. Some plural forms are irregular: the British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss.

**Great Britain** = England, Wales, and Scotland  
**The United Kingdom/The UK** = England, Wales, Scotland, and Northern Ireland  
Only people from England are English. People from Scotland, Wales, and Northern Ireland are not English, but they are British.
True or false? Write T or F.

1. Argentinians speak Spanish. **T**
2. Saudis speak Arabic. **F**
3. Mexicans speak Spanish. **T**
4. Thais speak Japanese. **F**
5. Hungarians speak Hungarian. **T**
6. Australians speak Australian. **F**
7. The Chinese speak Chinese. **T**
8. Brazilians speak Portuguese. **T**
9. Americans speak English. **T**
10. Czechs speak Polish. **T**

Complete the sentences.

1. China is in The Far _____________. **East**
2. Scotland is in Great _______________. **Britain**
3. Hungary is in _________________. **Europe**
4. Mexico is in ________________ America. **North**
5. Argentina is in ________________ America. **South**
6. Egypt is in _________________. **Africa**
7. Saudi Arabia is in _________________. **Asia**
8. India is in _________________. **Asia**
9. Australia is in _________________. **Oceania**

Write the names of the countries and languages.

- **England**, English
- **France**, French
- **Germany**, German
- **Spain**, Spanish
- **Italy**, Italian
- **China**, Chinese
- **United States**, American
- **Australia**, Australian
- **Vietnam**, Vietnamese
- **Brazil**, Brazilian

Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ian</th>
<th>-ish</th>
<th>-an</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test yourself. Cover the nationalities and languages in the table on page 18. Look at the countries and say the nationalities and languages.
5 I can use classroom vocabulary

1 board
2 board pen
3 noticeboard
4 bag
5 desk
6 CD player and CD
7 pen
8 pencil sharpener
9 ruler
10 pencil
11 folder
12 piece of paper
13 rubber
14 notebook
15 dictionary
16 table
17 chair
18 cassette player

1 Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (✗) by the things you can't.

- pen ✓
- board ❗
- desk ❗
- piece of paper ❗
- CD ❗
- board pen ❗
- noticeboard ❗
- pen ✓
- pencil ❗
- rubber ❗
- ruler ❗
- pencil sharpener ❗
- dictionary ❗
- table ❗
- chair ❗

2 Add another word to make a longer word or phrase.

- notebook
- notice
- CD
- board
- pencil
- piece of

3 ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.

- I've got a dictionary.     - I haven't got a cassette player.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.
6 I can use English language words

![Image](image.png)

**Good morning.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>adverb</th>
<th>definite article</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a sentence</td>
<td>An old man walked slowly down the hill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>verb</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indefinite article</td>
<td>plural noun (more than one)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="image.png">He spoke to a little girl and two boys. 'Good morning,' he said.</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronoun</td>
<td>singular noun (one)</td>
<td>phrase</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- There are eight *words* in the first sentence, and thirteen in the second.
- *Walk* is a regular verb; the *past simple* is *walked*.
- *Speak* is an irregular verb. The past simple is *spoke*, and the past participle is *spoken*. (The past participle is used to form the present perfect.)

1. **Circle the correct answer.**
   - A and *the* are *adjectives/articles*.
   - 1 *A* and *an* are *definite/indefinite* articles.
   - 2 *Woman* is a noun/sentence.
   - 3 *Up* is a *preposition/pronoun*.
   - 4 *Speak* is a regular/an irregular verb.

2. **Find the answers for each sentence.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have three English lessons every week.</th>
<th>a verb <strong>have</strong></th>
<th>2 a plural noun <strong>_______</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 a pronoun <strong>_______</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There's a young man from Rome in the class.</td>
<td>3 an adjective <strong>_______</strong></td>
<td>5 an indefinite article <strong>_______</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 a preposition <strong>_______</strong></td>
<td>6 a definite article <strong>_______</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Today, he asked a question, and he spoke quickly.</td>
<td>7 an adverb <strong>_______</strong></td>
<td>9 a regular past simple <strong>_______</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 an irregular past simple <strong>_______</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think he's in the wrong class.</td>
<td>10 a singular noun <strong>_______</strong></td>
<td>11 a sentence <strong>_______</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Question</td>
<td>Answer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What does 'dreadful' mean?</strong></td>
<td>I don't know. = It's a new word for me.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(NOT What means 'dreadful'?)</em></td>
<td>or It means 'terrible'.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What's this called in English?</strong></td>
<td>I can't remember. = I knew the word yesterday, but I don't know it today.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(NOT What is this?)</em></td>
<td>or It's a stamp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How do you say 'pasaporte' in English?</strong></td>
<td>Passport.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Could you explain 'No vacancies'?</strong></td>
<td>Yes, you see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(NOT Could you tell me ...?)</em></td>
<td><strong>What's the difference between 'hello' and 'hi'?</strong></td>
<td>The meaning is the same, but 'hi' is informal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What's the opposite of 'large'?</strong></td>
<td>Small.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How do you pronounce 'May'?</strong></td>
<td>/meɪ/, like 'day'.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Eight' is pronounced /aɪt/.</td>
<td><strong>Is that right?</strong> or <strong>Is that correct?</strong></td>
<td>No, that's wrong. or That's not right. It's pronounced /ɛt/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How do you spell 'apple'?</strong></td>
<td>I'm not sure. Is it one 'p' or two?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(NOT How do you spell your name?)</em></td>
<td>or A-double P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1–6 with a–g.

   | How do you spell your name? |
   | a It means 'very small'.    |
   | b It's what you say when you meet a friend. |
   | c D-E-double N-I-S. ✓       |
   | d /ˈtami/                   |
   | e No, it's wrong.           |
   | f I don't know.             |
   | g Open.                     |

2. Complete the questions.

   | What does 'awful' mean? |
   | ~ 'Terrible' or 'dreadful'. |
   | 1 What's this in English? |
   | ~ It's a frying pan.     |
   | 2 How do you 'tomato'?   |
   | ~ /təməˈtoʊ/              |
   | 3 ________________________ you spell 'eye'? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E. |
   | 4 What's the difference between 'bye' and 'goodbye'? ~ 'Bye' is more informal. |
   | 5 'Pen' is the same as 'pencil'. Is that? ~ No, that's wrong. |
   | 6 What's the of 'interesting'? ~ Boring. |
   | 7 What 'enormous' mean?   |
   | ~ It means 'very big'.    |
   | 8 Could you 'EXIT'? ~ You see it on a door. It means that you can go out there. |
Review: Basic English

Unit 1

Do the maths. Write the answer in words.

1. ten plus (+) seven = seventeen
2. eight minus (−) three = five
3. three plus nine = _________
4. four plus eleven = _________
5. nineteen minus six = _________
6. five plus twenty-nine = _________
7. eighteen minus five = _________
8. eighty-seven minus eight = _________
9. ninety-five plus seventeen = _________
10. thirty-five minus eight = _________
11. a hundred and five plus seventy = _________
12. three hundred minus fourteen = _________

Unit 2

Write the times in the box under the clocks. Then add 15 minutes to each time.
Write the new times with past or to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>five past eleven</th>
<th>twenty-five past five</th>
<th>ten to eight</th>
<th>midnight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>half past six</td>
<td>two to ten</td>
<td>five to nine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. 07:50 ten to eight +15 five past eight
2. 13:40 +15
3. 12:00 +15
4. 23:05 +15

Unit 3

1. Complete the sentences.

1. A What’s the _________ today?
   B The fifth _________ October.
2. A I don’t like January.
   B Why?
   A Because it’s the coldest _________ of the _________.
3. A Which _________ do you like best?
   B Summer.
4. A It’s my _________ today.
   B Really? How old are you?
5. A I’m going to California on New _________ _________.
   B Fantastic!
2 Write the answers.
- What’s the 1st day of the week? ____________
- What’s the 3rd month of the year? ____________
- What’s the 3rd season of the year in Britain? ____________
- What’s the 4th day of the week? ____________
- What’s the 5th month of the year? ____________
- What’s the 6th day of the week? ____________
- What’s the 7th month of the year? ____________
- What’s the 8th month of the year? ____________
- What’s the 9th month of the year? ____________
- What’s the 11th month of the year? ____________

Unit 4

1 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with capital letters. Then write C for ‘country’ or N for ‘nationality’.

- Saudi ______
- Britain ______
- Italy ______
- Hungary ______
- Mexico ______
- Switzerland ______

2 Complete the text.
My name’s Magda, and I’m studying English in London at the moment. I’m from Poland, and I live with two students: Silvia, who’s British, and Irina who’s from the Czech Republic. Irina speaks Czech and Polish. We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two Japanese students, a Korean, three Turkish women, a young Italian girl, a Chinese boy and four students from Spain. Our teacher is Dennis, and he’s Australian.

Unit 5

Write your answers.
- You put your things in this. a bag
- The teacher writes on this in the classroom.
- You use this if you make a mistake.
- You put notices on this.
- You find the meaning of words in this.
- You sharpen pencils with this.
- You write new vocabulary in this.
- You listen to CDs on this.
- You sit on this.
- You sit at one of these.
- You can put pieces of paper in this.
Unit 6

Find 12 more English language words in the square. Write them in the correct spaces below.

I S P A S T S I M P L E
V S T A R T I C L E W P
D E U P S I N G U L A R
I N G R E G U L A R D E
R T M O U D Y L U R J P
R E I N T R O S E K E O
E N L O A D G T P D C S
G C L U K E R U L T I
U E D N U W E M U I T
L Y A D V E R B R M V I
A R O F O P H R A S E O
R U W O R D C O L R P N

> Walked, went, saw __________________________
1 I come from France. ________________________
2 Quickly, slowly ____________________________
3 In, from, on ______________________________
4 Good afternoon, at school __________________
5 Walk(ed), look(ed), listen(ed) __________________
6 A, an, the ________________________________

Unit 7

Answer the questions. Use a dictionary if necessary.

What does terrible mean? It means very bad or dreadful.

1 What’s the opposite of correct? ________________________________
2 What’s the difference between spelling and pronunciation? ________________________________
3 How do you say hello in your language? ________________________________
4 How do you pronounce explain? ________________________________
5 What does wrong mean? ________________________________
6 Tiny means the same as enormous. Is that right? ________________________________

7 What’s this called in English? ________________________________
8 How do you spell ________________________________
Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The receptionist needs some information.

**RECEPTIONIST**

What’s your family name? ~ Bertoli.
And your first name? ~ Sandro.
Could I have your address? ~ 45 Alfred Road.
And the postcode? ~ CB2 4TX.

Now the receptionist is asking Sandro about himself and his family.

So, Sandro, where are you from? ~ Italy.
(or Where do you come from?)

Whereabouts in Italy? ~ Pisa.
(or Where in Italy exactly?)

What do you do in Pisa? ~ I’m a doctor.
(or What’s your job?)

And are you married or single? ~ I’m married.

Have you got any children? ~ Yes. A boy and a girl.

How old are they? ~ The boy’s six and the girl’s two.

1. In each question, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

   - Are married you? Are you married?
   - What do you in your country? What do you do?
   - Where do come from you? Where are you from?
   - Could I your address have? Could I have your address?
   - What’s your name family? What’s your family name?
   - What’s postcode your? What’s your postcode?
   - How are old your children? How old are your children?
   - Have you any children got? Have you got any children?
   - What’s your name first? What’s your first name?

2. Complete the questions. (You will answer these questions in Exercise 3.)

   - I need some information.
   - What’s your ___________ name? ~ Kovács.
   - And your ___________ name? ~ Zsuzsa.
   - Where are you ___________? ~ Hungary.
   - ___________? ~ The capital, Budapest.
   - And ___________ I have your address? ~ Tarcal utca 27.
   - And the ___________? ~ 1113.
   - And what ___________ you do? ~ I’m an engineer.
   - Are you ___________? ~ No, I’m still single.
   - How ___________ are you? ~ I’m 27.

3. ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions above, or ask another student.
### ABOUT YOU

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>single or married man</td>
<td>Mr</td>
<td>Miss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married woman</td>
<td>Mrs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single woman</td>
<td>Miss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>single or married woman</td>
<td>Ms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family name</td>
<td>surname</td>
<td>Rodriguez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first name(s)</td>
<td>forename(s)</td>
<td>Maria Helena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day, month, and year you were born</td>
<td>date of birth</td>
<td>12 June 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nationality</td>
<td>Argentinian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first language</td>
<td>mother tongue</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home address</td>
<td>California 2000, Piso 12 Buenos Aires C1289AAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phone number during the day</td>
<td>daytime tel</td>
<td>[54] 11 4302 8000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mobile no</td>
<td>0341 241248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>email address</td>
<td><a href="mailto:malena@latinoa.com.ar">malena@latinoa.com.ar</a></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>married or single?</td>
<td>marital status</td>
<td>single</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>job</td>
<td>occupation</td>
<td>sports teacher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elementary? intermediate? etc.</td>
<td>level of English (please tick)</td>
<td>elementary ✔ intermediate ✔ advanced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your written name</td>
<td>signature</td>
<td>Maria Rodriguez</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### True or false? Write T or F.

1. Miss = married or single woman ____
2. occupation = married or single ____
3. Mr = married woman ____
4. surname = first name ____
5. tick = ✔ ____
6. forename = family name ____
7. level = write your name ____
8. marital status = married or single ____
9. mother tongue = mother’s name ____
10. email address = where you live ____
11. date of birth = today’s date ____
12. daytime tel = phone number during the day ____

### ABOUT YOU

Write your information in the table above.

### Test yourself.

Cover the words and look at the meanings.

Can you remember the words?
10 I can talk about my family

A Family tree

All the people here are Damon's relatives.
Luke is Dave and Maggie's son.
Karen is Dave and Maggie's daughter.
Maggie is Dave's wife.
Dave is Maggie's husband.
Elsie and Alf are Maggie's parents (= mother and father).

Complete the sentences about Damon's family.

Paul is Elsie and Alf's ...son...
1 Maggie is Elsie's ... 
2 Luke is Paul's ... 
3 Jessica is Maggie's ... 
4 Maggie is Jane's ... 
5 Karen is Jessica's ... 

Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MALE</th>
<th>FEMALE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>father</td>
<td>mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>husband</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>son</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MALE</th>
<th>FEMALE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>brother-in-law</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandson</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Test yourself. Cover the male words in Exercise 2. Look at the female words. Say the male words.

4 ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and brother, sister, uncle, etc.
My parents got married 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother, Luke, was born. Then I was born a year after that. I’ve also got a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so there are five of us in my family. Luke’s got a girlfriend, Sue, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with our mum and dad. We spend a lot of time together.

**Spotlight: How old are you?**

Damon is 22 (years old). Not he has 22 years.

His brother is older than him. He’s 23.

His sister is younger than him. She’s 20.

 Alf’s the oldest in the family.

Karen’s the youngest in the family.

**Glossary**

- *get married* become husband and wife (get divorced stop being husband and wife)
- *be born* start your life
- *have got* have
- *there are five of us* NOT we are five
- *girlfriend/boyfriend* see picture below
- *mum* mother
- *dad* father
- *spend time with someone* be with someone and do things with them
- *together* with each other

5. **True or false? Write T or F.**

1. Damon is Luke’s older brother. [F]

2. Damon’s parents are divorced. [___]

3. Damon was born after Luke. [___]

4. Luke is younger than Karen. [___]

5. Luke and Sue live together. [___]

6. **Write the words in correct sentences.**

1. born /1/ 1989 / in / was

2. spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a

3. older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is

4. in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us

5. the / family / in / my / am

6. brother / younger / ’ve got / sister / an / older / and / a / I

7. **ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.**

1. How many people are there in your family?

2. When were you born?

3. Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you?

4. In your family, who do you spend a lot of time with?

5. Do you all live together?
11 I can describe physical actions

A Using your body

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Present Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sit down</td>
<td>sat down</td>
<td>sit down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand up</td>
<td>stood up</td>
<td>stand up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jump</td>
<td></td>
<td>jump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td></td>
<td>dance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td></td>
<td>climb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall over</td>
<td>fell over</td>
<td>fall over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walked</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on</td>
<td>got on</td>
<td>get on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get off</td>
<td></td>
<td>get off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Irregular verbs

The verbs sit, stand, run, fall, ride, lie and get are irregular. The past simple of these verbs is not formed by adding -ed. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 202.

1 Write the present form of the verbs.

1 walked
2 lay down
3 rode
4 climbed
5 fell over
6 sat down
7 lay down
8 stood up
9 run
10 got on
11 fell over
12 sat down
13 stood up
14 ride
15 jump
16 run
17 get on
18 get off

2 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6 – 9.

1 I sat down at my desk and worked for two hours.
2 The children have to stand up when the teacher comes into the classroom.
3 I often ride a bike to work in the summer – it’s only twenty minutes on foot.
4 I want to ride a bike to Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
5 Do you often lie down when you go to nightclubs?
6 The boys joined the swimming pool.
7 The doctor asked me to lie down on the bed.
8 She wanted to get on the bus, but I fell over.
9 She got off the bus, went into the station and jumped on a train.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.
B Using your hands

4 Make words from the letters.

- ivge give
- rrcay
- nurt fof
- tpu wond
- seloc
- thuco
- pord
- kipc pu
- kabre
- dloh
- uphs
- thsu
- pnoe

5 Can you do these things with one hand or do you need two? Write 1 or 2.

- shut a dictionary
- give someone five dictionaries
- touch a bicycle
- pick up a TV
- break a bottle

- pull your hair
- touch your hair
- turn off a radio
- hold a radio
- drop a ruler
- break a ruler
- carry a door
- close a door
- pick up a baby
- hold a baby

6 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the verb for each picture.
12 I can name parts of the body

1 head
2 face
3 hair
4 eye
5 ear
6 nose
7 cheek
8 chin
9 neck
10 shoulder
11 mouth
12 lip
13 tooth (plural teeth)
14 chest
15 stomach
16 waist
17 wrist
18 hand
19 back
20 arm
21 bottom
22 thumb
23 fingers
24 knee
25 leg
26 foot (plural feet)
27 ankle
28 toes

1 True or false? Write T or F.
I've got two...

- eyes T
- necks F
- noses
- lips
- heads
- thumbs
- hands
- arms
- shoulders
- wrists
- ankles

2 Which one is different? Circle it.

- finger thumb waist hand
- arm hand wrist stomach
- neck ears nose lips
- cheeks finger chin hair
- mouth teeth lips shoulder
- eyes legs knees ankle
- shoulder chest neck bottom

3 Complete the words.

- hair
- chest
- tooth
- hand
- foot
- leg
- arm
- cheek
- eye

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Name the parts of the body.
A. General description

How tall is he? He's 175 cms (tall).
How much does she weigh? She weighs about 60 kgs.

He's (very) good-looking.
She's (very) attractive.

1. True or false? Write T or F.
   - If you are overweight, you aren't slim. [ ]
   - Average height means not tall and not short. [ ]
   - Attractive and good-looking mean the same. [ ]
   - You can say a man is good-looking or beautiful. [ ]
   - If someone is fat, they are overweight. [ ]
   - The answer to ‘How much does he weigh?’ is ‘200 cms’. [ ]
   - ‘How tall are you?’ is correct. [ ]
   - It is polite to call someone fat and ugly. [ ]
   - Thin and slim mean the same, but thin is more positive. [ ]

2. Complete the dialogues. Don’t use the words in italics in your answer.
   - Is he attractive? ~ Yes, he's good-looking
   1. She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average
   2. Are the two brothers attractive? ~ Yes, they're both
   3. Is she quite thin? ~ Yes, she's very
   4. He's about average weight. ~ Yes, he
   5. Is he overweight? ~ Yes, he's a bit
   6. Is she very attractive? ~ Yes, she's

3. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
### B Hair and eyes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long?</th>
<th>What colour?</th>
<th>What kind?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>blonde</td>
<td>straight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium-length</td>
<td>light brown</td>
<td>curly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>dark brown</td>
<td>wavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>black</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- She's got
  - **short**
  - **medium-length**
  - **long**

- He's got
  - brown eyes
  - green eyes
  - blue eyes
  - a beard
  - a moustache

#### 4 Cross out the adjective you don’t need.

- She's got long, dark brown, black hair. (or She’s got long, **dark brown**, black hair.)
  1. I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
  2. Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
  3. My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
  4. My brother's got short, grey, black hair and a moustache.
  5. My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.

#### 5 Complete the questions. (You will write your answers in Exercise 6.)

- Is your hair brown? Is it **dark** brown or **light** brown?
  1. Is your hair long, m________-l__________, or s__________?
  2. What colour is it: bl__________, bl__________, br__________, or g__________?
  3. Is your hair st__________, w__________, or c__________?
  4. Have you got a b__________ or a m__________?
  5. Have you got br__________ eyes?

#### 6 ABOUT YOU

Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5. Then, if possible, tell another person about yourself.

I've got long, dark hair and...
C How old are they?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Word/phrase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>→ 18 months; before they can walk</td>
<td>a baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 → 10 or 11</td>
<td>a child plural children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 → about 17</td>
<td>a teenager or a young person plural young people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 →</td>
<td>an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>about 45 → 60</td>
<td>a middle-aged person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 →</td>
<td>an elderly man or woman</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other phrases for age:

- teens (13 → about 17)
- early twenties (20 → 23)
- mid-thirties (34 → 36)
- late fifties (57 → 59)

7 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.

- me (45) _______ a elderly
- my wife (38) _______ b in her late thirties
- my son (6 months) _______ c a teenager
- my daughter (7) _______ d in my mid-fourties ✓
- my brother (47) _______ e a baby
- my nephew (14) _______ f in her early sixties
- my aunt (63) _______ g an adult
- my father (79) _______ h middle-aged
- my niece (21) _______ i a child

8 ABOUT YOU Write the names of people in your family, or tell another student.

- a baby Marcus (my sister’s son) 4 an elderly woman ____________
- a young person ____________ 5 an elderly man ____________
- a middle-aged person ____________ 6 a baby ____________
- someone in his/her twenties ____________ 7 someone in his/her fifties ____________

9 Test yourself. Cover column two of the table. Look at the ‘age’ column and say the words and phrases.

10 Read the police description. Which man are the police looking for, X or Y?

The man we are looking for is in his mid-thirties. He is slim, with dark brown curly hair and a moustache. If you see him, please ring the police on 0088 997 4422.

11 Write a description of the other man. Use the text above to help you.

The other man is ____________
A What’s he/she like? ♦

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>The students in my class are all really friendly; it’s great.</td>
<td>happy to meet and talk to other people OPP unfriendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>He visited me a lot in hospital, which was really kind.</td>
<td>warm, friendly and always wanting to help other people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice</td>
<td>I met Colin on holiday and he’s a really nice guy.</td>
<td>kind and friendly (a very important word in spoken English) SYN pleasant OPP horrible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fun</td>
<td>I love Karen; she’s great fun.</td>
<td>something or someone that makes you happy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td>John makes me laugh – he’s just a really funny man.</td>
<td>making you laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed</td>
<td>My parents are very relaxed; they don’t get angry if I’m late.</td>
<td>calm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td>Tom is very clever – the best student in our class.</td>
<td>able to learn and understand very quickly SYN intelligent OPP stupid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>She’s quiet, but she can be funny.</td>
<td>someone who is quiet doesn’t say very much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serious</td>
<td>I like our teacher but she’s very serious.</td>
<td>someone who is serious thinks a lot and doesn’t laugh very much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Complete the words.

| 1 | f l n | 4 | n e e |
| 2 | f y | 5 | cl r |
| 3 | q t | 6 | f y |
| 4 | r l x d | 7 | la h |

2 Answer the questions.

What’s…

- a synonym for nice? pleasant
- the opposite of friendly? ___________
- a synonym for clever? ___________
- the opposite of nice? ___________
- the opposite of clever? ___________

What do you call someone who...

- likes meeting and talking to people? friendly
- makes you laugh? ___________
- thinks a lot and doesn’t laugh a lot? ___________
- is usually calm? ___________
- always wants to help others? ___________

3 Complete the conversations.

1 What’s Alex ___________? ~ He’s nice, but he’s very ___________. He doesn’t laugh much.
2 What ___________ Ana’s parents like? ~ Well, her mother’s great ___________; I like her very much. But her father doesn’t like people very much – he’s really ___________.
3 ___________ was your grandmother like? ~ She was very ___________. She always helped everyone. And she was ___________ too. She went to university.
Gemma: “I met Sophie at university. I was on my own, and she came up and talked to me; she’s like that. What’s interesting is that we’re complete opposites. She’s very happy to meet new people, but I’m really shy, she’s very sociable, I’m quiet; she’s sporty, and I’m not. But it wasn’t important. We became friends and shared a flat for two years. I’m very organized and did most of the housework. Sophie’s not very tidy, and she can be lazy around the house. But she’s a great cook and a really nice person.”

Glossary
- on my own: alone or without other people
- be complete opposites: be very different
- shy: If you’re shy, you can’t talk easily to people you don’t know.
- sociable: friendly and liking to talk to people
- sporty: liking sport and good at it
- share a flat: live in the same flat as another person
- organized: An organized person plans things well.
- tidy: A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. opp untidy
- lazy: A lazy person doesn’t like working. opp hardworking

Find and write four more examples of really + adjective from page 36.
- really kind
- really funny
- really polite
- really kind

Read the text again. Are these statements true or false? Write T or F.
1. Sophie likes sport. F
2. Gemma was alone when she met Sophie. T
3. Gemma and Sophie are very different. T
4. Gemma likes meeting new people. F
5. They lived together at university. T
6. Gemma’s sociable. F
7. Sophie’s very unfriendly. F
8. Sophie’s untidy. T
9. Gemma doesn’t plan things. T

Listen to the CD-ROM and do the exercises.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
What are you like? Are you …
1. sporty or not sporty?
2. a very relaxed person?
3. usually tidy or untidy?
4. lazy or hardworking?
5. quiet or very sociable?
6. a very organized person?
I can describe relationships

A Romantic relationships

Max is my partner, and we have a very good relationship. We’ve been together for about two years. I started to go out with him after I came to London. We met at my ex-boyfriend’s house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to get to know each other. Now Max wants us to get married and have a baby, but I’m not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married couples who have split up and are now divorced. I don’t want that to happen to us.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>word</th>
<th>definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>partner</td>
<td>someone you have a romantic relationship with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(your boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be together</td>
<td>be in a romantic relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out with someone</td>
<td>have a romantic relationship with someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ex-boyfriend</td>
<td>a person who was your boyfriend in the past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(also ex-girlfriend, ex-wife, ex-husband)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get to know someone</td>
<td>learn about and become friends with someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get married</td>
<td>become husband and wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a baby</td>
<td>become a new mother/father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couple</td>
<td>two people, often in a romantic relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>split up</td>
<td>stop having a romantic relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>divorced</td>
<td>married in the past but not now</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Write the words in correct sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence</th>
<th>answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They want to get married.</td>
<td>get / to / they / married / want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 baby / last / had / a / year / they</td>
<td>have / good / a / very / relationship / we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 split up / January / they / in</td>
<td>you / how / her / get to know / did / ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 have / good / a / very / relationship / we</td>
<td>5 three / together / for / they / years / were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 you / how / her / get to know / did / ?</td>
<td>6 with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sentence</th>
<th>answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They have a very good relationship.</td>
<td>They have a very good relationship.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 When did they ------ a baby?</td>
<td>When did they ------ a baby?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 My boyfriend and I have been ------ for two months.</td>
<td>My boyfriend and I have been ------ for two months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I know Phil and Sue very well. They’re a lovely ------ .</td>
<td>I know Phil and Sue very well. They’re a lovely ------ .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 She went ------- with him last year, but they split ------- in January.</td>
<td>She went ------- with him last year, but they split ------- in January.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Sonia is his ------- girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.</td>
<td>Sonia is his ------- girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 My parents were married for twenty years, but now they’re ------- . My father has a new ------- , but I don’t think they’re going to ------- married.</td>
<td>My parents were married for twenty years, but now they’re ------- . My father has a new ------- , but I don’t think they’re going to ------- married.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
WHY WE LIKE each other

Sophie: “I get on very well with Gemma – she’s great. I don’t know why, because we’re completely different. We first met at university, and then we became flatmates. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I ask for advice – and she always gives me good advice. We don’t see each other very often now, because we live in different parts of the country, but I’ve known her for a long time, and she will always be my closest friend.”

Glossary
- **get on (well) with someone** have a good relationship with someone
- **meet** see and speak to someone for the first time
- **become flatmates** start to be flatmates (also become friends)
- **flatmate** person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
- **advice** an opinion or information that you give to help someone with a problem (You give advice or you give someone advice.)
- **see someone** talk to or visit someone
- **know someone** be friends with someone or have met them
- **closest friend** most important friend (also best friend)

Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>We met last year.</th>
<th>I have known her for a year.</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>We live near each other.</td>
<td>We are flatmates.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>We don’t get on very well.</td>
<td>We have a very good relationship.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I see her every Saturday.</td>
<td>I meet her every Saturday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>She’s my best friend.</td>
<td>She’s my closest friend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>We became friends.</td>
<td>We stopped being friends.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>She gives me advice.</td>
<td>She helps me with my problems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Who is your closest friend? ____________________________
2 How long have you known him/her? ________________________
3 Where did you meet? __________________________________
4 How did you get to know him/her? _________________________
5 How often do you see each other? _________________________
6 Why do you get on well with him/her? ____________________
A Physical feelings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word/phrase</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What's the matter?</td>
<td>What's the matter? ~ Nothing</td>
<td>What's the problem?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel tired</td>
<td>I feel tired. I'm going to bed</td>
<td>want to rest or sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel hungry</td>
<td>I'm hungry. Is there anything to eat?</td>
<td>want something to eat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel thirsty</td>
<td>I'm thirsty. Can I have a juice?</td>
<td>want something to drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel boiling</td>
<td>I'm boiling. Can we open a window?</td>
<td>very, very hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel freezing</td>
<td>Where's my coat? I'm freezing.</td>
<td>very, very cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel nervous</td>
<td>Did you feel nervous before the exam? ~ Yes, I did, but it was OK.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be/feel ill</td>
<td>He felt ill after the meal. I think he had too much to eat.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not be/feel well</td>
<td>He doesn’t feel well, so I told him to go to bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 How do you feel? Write your answers.
   - You're outside. It’s -10 degrees. I’m freezing.__________________________
   1 It’s the end of a working day. ____________________________
   2 It’s minutes before an important exam. ____________________________
   3 You’ve had nothing to drink for hours. ____________________________
   4 You’ve had nothing to eat for hours. ____________________________
   5 You’re working. It’s 35 degrees. ____________________________
   6 Your body temperature is 39.5 degrees. ____________________________

2 Complete the dialogues.
   - When’s lunch? ~ I don’t know. Are you hungry? ____________________________
   1 What’s the States? ~ I ____________ ill.
   2 Are you ____________? ~ Yes, I’m going to bed.
   3 What’s the ____________? ~ I’m ____________. I need a coat.
   4 It’s very hot in here. ~ Yes, I know. I’m ____________. ____________________________
   5 Is it your driving test tomorrow? ~ Yes, and I’m feeling a bit ____________. ____________________________
   6 ____________ the matter? ~ I don’t feel ____________. ____________________________

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and examples, and look at the meaning. Can you say the words?
B Emotions

1. He's **happy**.
2. She's **sad**.
3. He's **excited**.
4. She's **worried**.
5. He's **angry**.
6. She's **frightened**.
7. He's **embarrassed**.
8. She's **surprised**.
9. He's **in love**.
10. She's **upset**.

**Spotlight**

**Get + adjective**

Get can mean 'become' or 'start to be'.

*My wife gets worried if I'm late.*

*The children got very excited at the party.*

4. Complete the words.
   - ha __ __ __ ___
   - ang __ __
   - wor __ __
   - up __ __
   - sca __ __
   - sur __ __
   - fri __ __
   - unh __ __
   - emb __ __ __
   - ex __ __

5. Complete the sentences.
   1. I was __ __ when I heard that her mother was very ill.
   2. The teacher got __ __ __ __ because the children were running round the classroom.
   3. I got 100% in my English exam. I was very happy but also very __ __ __ __.
   4. I got very __ __ __ __ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.
   5. My brothers get very __ __ __ __ when they're watching football on TV.
   6. I made a stupid mistake and everyone laughed. I felt very __ __ __ __.
   7. My sister and Joe are getting married. My parents are __ __ __ __ because they like him.
   8. I was very __ __ __ __ when my boyfriend found a new girlfriend.
   9. My aunt never travels by plane. She's __ __ __ __ of flying.
   10. They met on holiday. I think they're in __ __ __ __.

6. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
Review: People

Unit 8

Complete the dialogue using information in the notes to help you.

Helena Costa
Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63
São Paulo
05065 – 002
Brazil
Art teacher
Married; one son, Marco, 7

A Hello there. Now, what's your family name?
B Costa.
A Right, and your first (1) ____________?
B Helena.
A OK, Helena, and where do (2) ____________ from?
B I'm (3) ____________ Brazil.

A Oh, where in Brazil (4) ____________?
B São Paulo.
A Right, and could (5) ____________ your address?
B It's Rua da Marquesa de Santos 63, São Paulo.
A And the (6) ____________?
B It's 05065–002.
A And what do you (7) ____________?
B I (8) ____________ an art teacher.
A Oh, really? And (9) ____________ married?
B Yes, I am. And I've got a son.
A Oh, (10) ____________ is he?
B He's seven.

Unit 9

Find 11 more words, phrases, or short words from the unit. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

MARITAL STATUS
OCCUPATION EXU
T D U T I C K G G D L M R
HAEFORENAMENI
ETMAILWOMROS
REPLADDRESSM
TONGUEDAYTIME
YFBIRTHSINGLE

Unit 10

1 Find 13 more family words in the word-square.

AGORELATIVES
GSJOGYWESGTI
KIDAUTHERTDO
OSYMEFOTNAUM
ATBXHUSBANDI
URICUNLIĐQ
NRBROTHERFU
TIPWUNCLEEAI
LNOISTICATMU
OLWFiSNEPHEW
PARENTSJOETI
RWUNIECEERFA
2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

He's eighteen years.  He's eighteen.

1. My brother has eighteen years old.  
3. My sister is younger than me.  
4. His parents are divorce.  
5. There are five of we in my family.  
6. She is more old than her brother.  
7. We spend together a lot of time.  
8. Who is the youngest of the family?  

Unit 11

1 Complete the table with the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>push ✓</th>
<th>walk</th>
<th>pick something up</th>
<th>stand up</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>pull</th>
<th>jump</th>
<th>carry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drop</td>
<td>turn something off</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>put something down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using your hands  
Using your feet or legs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>push</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

2 Circle the correct word.

You get on a bus/a house.  
1. You can open a door/a light  
2. You can touch a park/a wall  
3. You can turn on a radio/a watch  
4. You can pick up a car/a bicycle  
5. You can ride a car/a bicycle  
6. You can hold a bag/a classroom  
7. You can break some juice/a pencil  
8. You can climb a tree/a bus  
9. You can close a TV/a book  
10. You can sit down on a bed/the sea

Unit 12

1 Above or below the waist? Write A (above) or B (below).

foot B  2 ankle  5 shoulder  8 knee  11 bottom  
head A  3 foot  6 chin  9 toes  12 neck  
1 ears  4 chest  7 leg  10 nose  13 mouth  

2 Write another part of the body which is between the other two. Look at the example.

nose mouth chin  3 wrist fingers  6 eyes mouth  
1 hand shoulder  4 ankle toes  
2 chest head  5 back leg
Unit 13

1 Write about the people.

She's tall, slim and attractive. She's got medium-length, dark brown hair. She's a teenager.

2 Put the words in order from young (1) to old (9).

- in your early thirties
- a baby
- a teenager
- in your mid-twenties
- middle-aged
- elderly
- in your early sixties
- in your late thirties

Unit 14

1 Complete the table with words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Positive or negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td>unfriendly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the dialogues.

► She's nice. ~ Yes, very pleasant.
1 She doesn't do any work. ~ No, she's very ____________________________.
2 Does she meet new people easily? ~ No, she's very ____________________________.
3 Did you live in the same place? ~ Yes, we ____________________________ a flat.
4 I really like being with her. ~ Yes, she's great ____________________________.
5 She's clever, isn't she? ~ Yes, very ____________________________.
6 Were you with other people? ~ No, I was ____________________________ a flat.
7 She makes me laugh. ~ I know, she's very ____________________________.
8 She plans everything. ~ Yes, she's very ____________________________.
Unit 15

1 Circle the correct word.
Lucy met John at a disco when she was just twenty. She got/went out with him for a year. Then suddenly, one weekend, he took her to Paris where they got married. They have a very good relationship, and they get/go on well with each other's family, too. Last year, they had a baby girl called Paula. They've been together/each other for eight years now. I don't think they will ever split off/up, or get/go divorced, because they are a very happy couple/two.

2 Complete the questions with a verb from the box.

become (x2)  is (x2)  give (x2)  get (x2)  are
see

► Are they married?  
1 How did you to know Jack?  
2 When did you friends with Jana?  
3 your closest friend?  
4 Do you your ex-boyfriend often?

Unit 16

1 Correct the spelling mistakes.

► He’s frightend, frightened
1 Why are they exited?  
2 I’m hangry.  
3 She was very suprised.  
4 I think he was embarassed.  
5 I’m very worrid.

2 Are these feelings positive or negative? Write P or N.

► She’s very sad.  
1 My daughter’s excited about the dog.  
2 She’s really unhappy at the moment.  
3 He was embarrassed about it.  
4 I don’t feel well.  
5 It’s freezing in this room.

6 My brother’s in love.  
7 He’s scared of her.  
8 I was very upset about it.  
9 I felt nervous before I met him.  
10 They’re all happy.
I usually get up at 7.00.
I have a shower.
I get dressed.
I have breakfast.
I usually leave home at 8.00.
I get to work at 8.30.
I finish work at 5.00.
I have dinner at 8.15.
I go to bed at 11.30.
I sleep seven hours a night.

17 I can describe my routine

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What do you do on weekdays?

I usually get up at 7.00.
I have a shower.
I get dressed.
I have breakfast.
I usually leave home at 8.00.
I get to work at 8.30.
I finish work at 5.00.
I have dinner at 8.15.
I go to bed at 11.30.
I sleep seven hours a night.

1 Match the verbs in column 1 with words in columns 2 and 3. Write the sentences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1 | get | work before breakfast | I get up at 7.30 a.m.
| 2 | get | at 11 o'clock    |   |
| 3 | have | seven hours | 7.30 a.m. |
| 4 | leave | dressed | at 6 p.m.
| 5 | finish | home with my family |   |
| 6 | have | dinner a night |   |
| 7 | go | breakfast at 8.00 a.m. |   |
|   | sleep | to bed | at 8.30 a.m. |   |

2 Complete the questions with the correct verb. (You will write your answers in Exercise 3.)

What time do you usually get up in the morning?
1 Do you usually get up dressed before or after breakfast?
2 Do you usually get up a shower in the morning?
3 What time do you usually get up home in the morning?
4 What time do you usually get up to school/university/work?
5 Who do you usually have dinner with?
6 What time do you usually get up to bed?
ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.

Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the sentences. Say the phrases.

B Weekends (Saturday and Sunday)

What do you do at the weekend?

During the week I usually stay in after school. I often study in the evenings, watch TV, listen to music, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or go and see a film. At the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning I usually go shopping with a friend, or I go to the gym, and sometimes I study in the afternoon. I go out with my boyfriend in the evening. On Sundays, I get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at the weekend</th>
<th>on Saturday and Sunday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>during the week</td>
<td>from Monday to Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay in</td>
<td>stay at home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>once a week</td>
<td>one time in every week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twice a week</td>
<td>two times in every week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come round</td>
<td>come to my home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>leave home to go to a bar, cinema, restaurant, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go shopping</td>
<td>go to the shops to buy clothes, CDs, etc. (When you do the shopping you buy food.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go to the gym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late</td>
<td>after the usual time or early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go for a walk</td>
<td>have a short walk to enjoy yourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play tennis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the</th>
<th>shopping</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>for</th>
<th>a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>week</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>once</td>
<td>walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>during</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>twice</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay</td>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>shopping</td>
<td>at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>gym</td>
<td>the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>the</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complete the sentences.

1. I go to a restaurant once or twice a week.
2. Do you want to go shopping?
3. Come to my flat after work.
4. I can’t play tennis this weekend.
5. Do you want to go out on Saturday?
6. I’m really tired today because I went to bed last night.
7. What are you doing the weekend?
8. I go to the gym twice a week because I like to exercise.
9. I often go to the shopping very , at 8.00 in the morning.
10. We often go and a film on Sunday.
C  Frequency words

These adverbs go before the main verb (e.g. get up), but after an auxiliary verb (e.g. do, does, have, can or be).
I always get up late on Sundays.
Do you often go out in the evening?
We occasionally go for a walk.
I'm hardly ever ill.

7 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Old Sentence</th>
<th>New Sentence</th>
<th>Decision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I always go shopping on Saturdays.</td>
<td>I go shopping every Saturday.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I sometimes work at home.</td>
<td>I often work at home.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>She's hardly ever late for work.</td>
<td>She's rarely late for work.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>We often finish classes early.</td>
<td>We finish classes early every day.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I never eat meat.</td>
<td>I occasionally eat meat.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>She always has a shower in the morning.</td>
<td>She has a shower every morning.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>In August we play tennis every day.</td>
<td>In August we play tennis all day.</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 Write the sentences using a word from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Word from Box</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hiro goes to restaurants two or three times a week.</td>
<td>often</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haruko always gets up early.</td>
<td>always</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiro goes to the gym once a year.</td>
<td>never</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haruko stays in seven nights a week.</td>
<td>occasionally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiro studies from 9.00 to 5.00.</td>
<td>all day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haruko doesn't have a shower in the morning.</td>
<td>hardly ever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiro goes to the cinema about six times a year.</td>
<td>every day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9 ABOUT YOU True or false? If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Corrected Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I hardly ever play tennis.</td>
<td>False. I often play tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I always have a shower before breakfast.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I often go out on Friday evening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I never listen to music in the evening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I rarely study on Sunday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I sometimes watch TV at the weekend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I never work in the evening.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I usually go shopping on Monday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I occasionally go to the gym after dinner.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18 I can talk about clothes

A Clothes

1. shirt
2. top
3. jumper SYN sweater
4. trousers
5. jeans
6. skirt
7. dress
8. T-shirt
9. jacket
10. suit
11. coat
12. raincoat

1. Complete the words.
   - s___ t
   - j___ t
   - t____ s
   - j___ r
   - c___ t
   - r____ t
   - d___ s
   - j___ s
   - s____ r

2. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

B Colours

white cream yellow green blue purple pink
brown red orange grey black dark blue pale blue or light blue

3. Look at the clothes above. True or false? Write T or F.
   - a green sweater T
   - red trousers F
   - a pale blue shirt____
   - dark blue jeans____
   - a light blue coat____
   - grey trousers____
   - a black suit____
   - a brown jacket____
   - a pale yellow top____
   - a pink raincoat____
   - a blue skirt____
   - an orange and white T-shirt____
   - a purple dress____

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and name the colours.
5 One word in each group is wrong. Cross it out.

- trousers trainers jeans
- 1 trainers boots gloves
- 2 scarf umbrella tie
- 3 jeans socks shoes
- 4 sandals glasses hat
- 5 glove watch hat
- 6 scarf belt jeans

6 Make the sentences singular if possible.

- Are these your boots? Is this your boot?  
- Her glasses are nice. Not possible.
- 1 Give me the socks.  
- 2 Where are my tights?  
- 3 I've got two pairs of sandals.
- 4 Do you like my new trousers?  
- 5 She's wearing my scarves.  
- 6 Where are my gloves?  
- 7 The jeans cost €20.  
- 8 I don't like these sunglasses.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 What are you wearing today?  
2 What clothes do you wear at the weekend?  
3 Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?  
4 Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?  
5 How often do you wear: a hat? a scarf? a watch?

8 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
19 I can buy clothes    Do Unit 18 first

A Describing clothes

1 long
2 short
3 cheap
4 expensive
5 smart
6 casual
7 small/little
8 large/big
9 uncomfortable
10 comfortable
11 tight
12 loose

I like it – it's really nice/lovely.
I don't like it – it's horrible/awful.

1 Look at the pictures and describe the clothes.

a cheap tie
1 a s. skirt
2 c. shoes
3 a s. handbag
4 c. clothes
5 a l. T-shirt
6 an e. tie
7 s. clothes
8 a l. skirt

2 Circle the correct word.

► My handbag is very large/small, so I put lots in it.
1 I like these trainers, but they're very comfortable/uncomfortable.
2 I've got some really nice/horrible boots. I wear them a lot.
3 At the weekend, I usually wear casual/smart clothes.
4 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear cheap/expensive clothes.
5 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a small/large T-shirt.
6 You need your long/short coat today; it's really cold.
7 If you are going to the gym, it's better to wear tight/loose clothes.
8 That suit is awful/lovely – you must buy it.

3 Write the opposite of the underlined word.

► You need a large belt.
1 She's wearing a long coat.
2 Are those boots comfortable?
3 We can wear smart clothes.
4 Was the belt very cheap?
5 She doesn't want tight trousers.
6 Does this look nice?

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and say the adjectives and clothes in the pictures.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>Problems with size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What size are you?</td>
<td>I'm a (size) 12.</td>
<td>It’s the wrong size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What size do you take?</td>
<td>I take size 40. small/medium/large</td>
<td>They're fit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>It's too long.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>They're too big.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Complete the sentences.

1. What size are you?
   ~ I'm 14.
2. Is she small, or large?
3. I'm sorry, this shirt is the size.
4. Does this jumper tight for me?
   ~ No, it's tight for me.
5. What size do you?
   ~ Small.
6. I like the trousers but they don't ;
   they're long.

6 Look at the pictures. What's the problem?

1. The jacket's too short.
2. The trousers are.
3. The hat is too big.
A shop assistant (SA) and a customer (C) are talking.

SA | Do you need any help?
---|---
C | Yes, I'm looking for a smart, black skirt.
SA | What size do you take?
C | I'm a 12.
C | Oh, this is lovely. Can I try it on?
SA | Yes, sure. The changing room is over there.
C | Oh, no, it's too tight.
SA | Here's a size 14.
SA | That looks really nice.
C | Thanks. Yes, it's fine. I think I'll take it.
SA | Where do I pay?
C | The cash desk is at the front.
SA | How would you like to pay?
C | By credit card.
SA | That's fine. Thank you.

1. Can I help you?
2. I / where / pay / do ?
3. changing / where's / excuse me / the / room / ?
4. dress / can / on / this / try / I / ?
5. pair / I'm / of / looking / trousers / for / a
6. help / you / need / do / any / ?

5 | Excuse me. Where's the changing ?
6 | Do you need any?
7 | Oh, that looks . You must buy it.
8 | How would you like to ?

1. Do you like shopping for clothes?
2. How often do you buy clothes?
3. What was the last thing you bought?
4. Do you always know what you're looking for?
5. Do you always try clothes on?
6. How do you usually pay?
You are in a shop and decide to buy three CDs. They cost €9 each, which is €27 altogether. You can pay in cash (notes and coins): for example, you give the shop assistant €30, and he gives you €3 change. You can also pay by credit card. The assistant puts your card in a machine and asks you to enter (or put in) your PIN. You can also pay by debit card or cheque. At the end, he gives you your CDs and a receipt.

**Glossary**

- **cost** How much does it cost? = How much is it?
- **€9 each** = €9 for one
- **€27 altogether** = €27 for everything
- **change** the money you get back if you give the assistant more than something cost
- **debit card** If you use a debit card, the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).
- **PIN** = Personal Identification Number (also PIN number)

**spotlight Money**

- **€5.30** five euros thirty or five thirty
- **€10.99** ten pounds ninety-nine
- **an ten pounds/euro note** not a ten pounds/euros note

1. **Correct the mistakes.**
   - Can I pay for cheque? **Can I pay by cheque?**
   - The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.
   - Could you put your PIN, please?
   - She paid for the dress of cash.
   - I've only got a 50 pounds note.
   - They're €6 for each.
   - Have you got a bank count?
   - Three books. That's €42 together.
   - The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 money.

2. **Complete the dialogues.**
   - A I'd like this watch, please.
   - B Fine. How would you like to pay?
   - A By debit card.
   - B Thanks. Could you put your PIN, please?
   - A Yes, please.
   - B Thank you. Here's your watch and your receipt.
   - C Hi. How much do these peaches cost?
   - D They're 50 cents.
   - C I'll have six, please, and a melon.
   - C I'm sorry, I've only got a €50 note.
   - D That's OK. I've got lots of...
B Money in adverts

Sell your car on esellers.com!

Photo printer half price.
Normal price: €120, now €60!

Spend €50 on Italian wine and get a free pizza.

Fly to Dublin, fares from £16.

Pay your gas bill online and save 5%.

Pay your gas bill online and save 5%.

Earn £30 an hour in your own home. Ring 0990 557731.

Play the Lottery and win €1,000,000!

Glossary
sell PT sold give something to someone who pays you money for it or buy PT bought
price the money you have to pay for something (If something is half price, you pay 50%).
spend money on something PT spent pay money for something free If something is free, you don't pay for it.
bill a piece of paper which shows how much you need to pay online on the internet
save If you save 5% on a bill, you pay 95% of the bill.
fare the money you pay to go by plane, train, etc.
earn get money for the work you do lottery game where you buy tickets and can win money
win PT won get money etc. in a game

3 Circle the correct answer.

I bought this tablet online/free.
1 What's the price/bill of these shoes?
2 I don't spend/pay a lot on food.
3 I bought ten bottles and earned/saved €3.
4 I won/earned £100 in the lottery.

5 How much was the train bill/fare?
6 Doctors win/earn a lot of money.
7 I bought/sold my old car and got a new one.
8 She paid the restaurant bill/receipt.

4 Test yourself. Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.

pay paid
1 buy
2 spend
3 sell
4 earn
5 win
6 save

5 Complete the questions with a word from the box.
(You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

How much do you spend on food every week?
1 Do you ever shop?
2 Is your phone expensive?
3 Is water in restaurants?
4 What's the price of a litre of milk?
5 Are train cheap?
6 Do women more than men?

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 or ask another student.
21 I can talk about the weather

A What's the weather like? 🌞

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It's sunny.</td>
<td>The sun's shining.</td>
<td>sun/sunshine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's cloudy.</td>
<td>It's raining.</td>
<td>cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's wet.</td>
<td>It's wetting.</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's windy.</td>
<td>The wind's blowing.</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's icy.</td>
<td>It's icy.</td>
<td>ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It's foggy.</td>
<td>It's snowing.</td>
<td>snow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

- It's _______
- It _______
- The wind _______
- It isn't _______
- The sun _______
- It's _______
- There's a bit _______
- There's a lot of _______
- It doesn't _______
- What's _______

- a of cloud today.
- b it foggy outside?
- c isn't raining.
- d cold this morning.
- e snow on the roads.
- f rain a lot here.
- g the weather like?
- h very windy.
- i blew my hat off.
- j is shining.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct word.

- There was a lot of ice. It was very _______
- It isn't raining. There's no _______
- Is the sun shining? Is it _______
- We often have snow. It often _______
- She doesn't like fog. She doesn't like _______
- It was very windy on Friday. There was a lot of _______
- There are no clouds. It isn't _______

3 Test yourself. Cover the words in the table and look at the pictures. What's the weather like?
B Wet and dry weather

In my country, the weather in spring is very changeable. It can be pleasant and dry, but we often have showers. It can get hot in the summer for two or three months, and in the cities it is often humid, especially before a storm. It's cooler on the coast, where there is usually a sea breeze. In autumn, we get some heavy rain, perhaps with thunder and lightning. In winter, it can be dry, sunny and freezing, or grey and damp.

4 Circle the correct word.
1. There was a bit of sunshine between the showers/lightning.
2. Do you like watching the lightning/thunder when it's stormy?
3. The air in the Sahara Desert is dry/humid, and it's very hot/cool at midday.
4. Showers usually last a few hours/minutes.
5. In cold, wet weather, your clothes feel damp/humid.
6. By the sea you get a nice breeze/wind.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets.
1. It rained a lot last night (heavy). There was __________.
2. It was warm and damp yesterday (humid). It __________.
3. There was a bit of rain in the afternoon (shower). There __________.
4. The weather changes a lot (changeable). The weather __________.
5. It isn't wet today (dry). It __________.
6. We had heavy rain and thunder (storm). We had __________.

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Make the sentences true for your country.
1. We often have storms in July. We never have storms in July.
2. We have a lot of showers in the spring.
3. In winter it's always freezing at night.
4. The weather is always the same in the summer.
5. We sometimes have heavy rain for 24 hours.
6. Our winters are usually dry.
7. We often have thunder and lightning.
8. It is usually hot and dry in summer.
A Common problems

What's the matter?
I don't feel well.
I've got...

a headache toothache stomach-ache a cold a cough a sore throat

flu a temperature a pain in my leg also my leg hurts backache I feel sick

1 Circle the correct answer.
   - I'm/I've got a temperature. 7 He's got flu/a flu?
   1 My back pain/hurts. 8 Is/Has she got a temperature?
   2 I feel/‘ve got a cold. 9 I hurt/‘ve got a pain in my eye.
   3 He doesn’t feel/be well. 10 Is/Has she got a temperature?
   4 I feel/‘ve got toothache. 11 She is/’s got a sore throat.
   5 Do you feel/be sick? 12 I don't feel/haven't got a cough.
   6 My knee feels/hurts.

2 Complete the sentences.
   - I had to stand up for ten hours; now I've got backache.
   1 She has always smoked a lot, and now she's got a bad ________________.
   2 He’s got a ___________________ – look, it’s 39 degrees.
   3 I walked 20 kilometres today, and my feet ___________________.
   4 What’s the ___________________? You look terrible. – I don’t feel ___________________.
   5 I ate too much at lunch and now I’ve got ___________________.
   6 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels ___________________.
   7 I’ve got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I’ve got ___________________.
   8 I can’t eat anything; I’ve got a sore ___________________.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
B What should I do? 6

Glossary

**go and see** go to, visit
**GP** (General Practitioner) family doctor
**chemist's** shop where you get medicine (also pharmacy)
**lie down**

You should **go and see** your GP.
You should go to the **chemist's**.
You should **stay in bed** for a day or two.
You should go and lie down for a while.

**should** + **verb**

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. **Should** is used for giving advice.

I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed. You **shouldn't** go to work today.

**for a while** for a short time
**stay in bed** go to bed and not get up
**for a day or two** for a short time (not more than three days)

4 Cross out one word you don’t need in each sentence.

- I don’t feel **very** well.
- I’ve got a cold. (chemist’s)
- You should **to** go to the chemist’s.
- You should go to bed for a day or two.
- You should go and see your doctor.
- You should **stay in bed** and don’t do anything.
- Go and lie down for a while.
- Lie down for the **a** while.

5 Write some advice to people using **should** and the word in brackets.

- I’ve got a cold. (chemist’s) **You should go to the chemist’s.**
- I’ve got backache. (lie)
- My ear hurts. (pharmacy)
- I’ve got a sore throat, a cough and a temperature. (stay)
- I feel sick. (while)
- I’ve got flu. (GP)

There are more practice exercises on the CD-ROM.
In a chemist's shop, a chemist (Ch) is talking to a customer (C).

Ch Can I help you?
C Yes, I cut my finger yesterday, and it really hurts.
Ch You need some antiseptic cream for it.
C Right. Could I have some plasters and some cotton wool, please?
Ch Yes, of course. That's €5.60, please.

Ch Yes?
C Er, I need something for a cold.
Ch Right, well, try these tablets — they're very good.
C OK, and how often do I take them?
Ch Take two tablets every four hours with water.
C Thanks. And I'd like a box of tissues, please, and some cough medicine.

Glossary

need If you need something, it's necessary or important for you to have it.

antiseptic You put antiseptic cream on a cut to clean it.

try Use something (e.g. a tablet, medicine) to see if it helps.

take a tablet Eat a tablet (also take medicine).

correct the spelling. Be careful: one is correct.

1. chimist chemist
2. coton wool
3. something
4. antiseptic
5. plastres
6. farmacis
7. creme
8. medicin

2. Complete the sentences using phrases from the box.

for toothache, please help you a sore throat some plasters, please

take these tablets wool this medicine — it's very good cream

tablet three times a day for your finger a box of

Customer

1. I'd like a box of tissues, please.
2. Have you got something for ___________ ?
3. How often do I ___________ ?
4. I need something ___________ .
5. I need some cotton ___________ .
6. Could I have ___________ ?

Chemist

6. You need some plasters ___________ .
7. Try ___________ .
8. Take one ___________ .
9. Do you need antiseptic ___________ ?
10. Can I ___________ ?

Test yourself. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and say the words.
Unit 17

1 Put the preposition in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

We often go out on Saturday night. (out)

1 We sometimes go a walk after lunch. (for)

2 Do you usually play tennis the weekend? (at)

3 I usually go the gym, and then I go home. (to)

4 She listens music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping. (to)

5 On Sundays I often stay and watch TV. (in)

6 I talk my parents every evening. (to)

7 My sister occasionally comes and we have dinner together. (round)

8 What time do you get work in the morning? (to)

2 Complete Jana’s daily routine below using phrases a – k.

My husband, Marco, and I have the same routine every day. I usually get (3) ______ and have (1) ______. I get dressed (2) ______, and Marco always has a shower and (3) ______. We have (4) ______, then Marco and I leave (5) ______. I go to the town centre and do (6) ______ on my way to work. I get (7) ______. I finish (8) ______. We have (9) ______, and I go (10) ______.

Unit 18

1 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

You wear them on your feet in summer. ______

1 You wear them inside your shoes. ______

2 You wear it on your head. ______

3 You wear them on your hands. ______

4 You wear them on your feet. ______

5 You wear it on your wrist. ______

6 You wear it round your neck. ______

7 You wear it over a shirt. ______

8 You wear them over your legs and feet. ______

9 You can wear it under a shirt. ______

10 You wear it round your waist. ______
2 Label the colours.

1
2
3
4
5

6
7
8
9
10

3 Write a, some or a pair of.

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
\text{a} & \text{hat} & 1
\text{jeans} & 2
\text{jumpers} & 3
\text{gloves} & 4
\text{scarf} & 5
\text{jeans} & 6
\text{ties} & 7
\text{trousers} & 8
\text{shirts} & 9
\text{trainers} & 10
\end{array} \]

Unit 19

1 Complete the puzzle. Answer 1 – 16. Follow the arrows.

\[ \begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
\text{U} & \text{N} & \text{C} & \text{L} & \text{P} & \text{A} & \text{M} & \text{R} & \text{T} & \text{L} & \text{A} & \text{R} & \text{D}
\end{array} \]

\[ \text{Opposite of comfortable.} \]
1 OK, I’ll _____ it.
2 Opposite of tight.
3 Opposite of expensive.
4 What _____ are you? ~ I’m a 14.
5 Can I _____ it on?
6 The _____ room is over there.
7 I’d like to _____ in cash.
8 Synonym for awful.
9 The place where you pay in a shop is the _____
10 Small, _____ or large?
11 Can I _____ you?
12 It’s the _____ size. It’s too small.
13 Opposite of smart.
14 A person who works in a shop is a shop _____
15 No, thanks, I’ll _____ it. It’s too expensive.
16 Do you _____ any help?
2 Complete the conversation between the shop assistant (SA) and the customer (C).

SA  Hello, do you need any help?
C  Yes, I'm looking for some brown trousers.
SA  Right. What size do you think?
C  Oh, size 10, I think.
SA  OK, well, how about these?
C  Oh, yes, they're very nice. Where can I try them on?
SA  The changing is over there.

Later...

SA  Hmm, they really nice.
C  Yes, but they're small. Can I try on a 12, please?

Later...

C  They're ! I'll take . Where do I ____________ ?
SA  At the ____________ desk.

Unit 20

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- You pay a receipt. _F__
- You can pay for things by cheque or bill. ___
- You can use a credit card to pay for things you buy online. ____
- If you pay in cash, you use notes and coins. ___
- If you buy three things for €60 altogether, they cost €180 each. ____
- If you use a credit card in a shop, they usually ask you to enter a PIN. ___
- If you win a car, you don't have to pay for it. It's free. ____

2 Complete the text.

Last year, I won €10,000 on the 1. I was so excited! The first day, I went out and sold my old car and bought a new one. It only cost €3000 because it was half price, and I also saved another 5% because I paid in cash. The next day, I gave my brother some money. He doesn’t eat very much, so I paid his electricity and phone bills for him, and then I gave him the plane fare to Lisbon so that he could go and see his girlfriend. And I’ve still got some money in the bank.

Unit 21

1 Write a lot, a lot of, a bit, or a bit of.

- It rained yesterday – I couldn’t go out.
  1 It’s wet today.
- There was fog this morning. I couldn’t see where I was driving.
- It snows in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day.
- There’s rain, but it’s not much. You don’t need your umbrella.
- It snowed last night – only two centimetres.
- We had sun yesterday – from morning to evening. It was lovely.
2 Complete the crossword.

Across
2 The wind _______ more in autumn.
5 Noun from icy.
8 Warm and damp weather feels _______.
9 You need good _______ for skiing.
11 Very cold.
12 It rained a lot - we had _______ rain.
13 Opposite of wet.

Down
1 We had a _______ of rain.
3 Heavy rain with black clouds and wind.
4 Adjective from wind.
6 Rain for a short time.
7 The noise you hear in storms.
10 The sun _______ more in summer.
11 Adjective from fog.

Unit 22

Find the illness words in the square. Write them in 1 – 9.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>Z</th>
<th>H</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>J</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>G</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I've got a cold.
- I've got a
- I've got a
- I've got
- I've got
- I've got
- I feel
- I don't feel
- My arm
- I've got a pain in my

Unit 23

Complete the conversation between the Chemist (Ch) and customer (C).

Ch  Good morning, can I help you?
C  I need _______ for a sore throat.
Ch  Right. (2) _______ these (3) _______ – they're excellent.
C  OK, how (4) _______ do I (5) _______ them?
Ch  (6) _______ one now, and then every two hours.
C  OK, and (7) _______ I have a (8) _______ of tissues, and some cough (9) _______ , please?
Ch  Yes, of course.
24 I can name meat and fish

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>animal</th>
<th>cow</th>
<th>lamb/sheep</th>
<th>pig</th>
<th>chicken</th>
<th>duck</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>meat</td>
<td>beef</td>
<td>lamb</td>
<td>pork</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>duck</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do you eat pork or bacon? [Yes, I do. No, I don’t.]

Fish
- salmon
- tuna

Seafood
- squid
- prawns
- crab
- mussels

1 Which one is different? Why?
- cow sheep salmon pig
  1 cow pig pork sheep
  2 ham lamb sausages bacon
  3 lamb pork beef tuna
  4 salmon prawns mussels squid
  5 duck cow lamb chicken

- Salmon, because it’s a fish.
- ________________, because ________________
- ________________, because ________________
- ________________, because ________________
- ________________, because ________________
- ________________, because ________________

2 Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood.
  1 _ee_ 2 _or_ 3 _un_ 4 _uc_ 5 _ra_

3 Write the word for the meat or fish.
  1 beef
  2 ____________
  3 ____________
  4 ____________
  5 ____________
  6 ____________

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
  Do you like:
  1 bacon? ____________  4 mussels? ____________
  2 beef? ____________  5 crab? ____________
  3 squid? ____________  6 tuna? ____________
  7 prawns? ____________  8 duck? ____________
  9 lamb? ____________

5 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.
I can name fruit and vegetables

A Fruit 🍊

banana  orange  peach  apple  pear  lemon  mango

strawberry  cherry  melon  grapes  pineapple  avocado

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taste</td>
<td>This juice tastes of orange and lemon.</td>
<td>it's like orange and lemon when you drink it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>Strawberries are very sweet.</td>
<td>tasting of sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bitter</td>
<td>Lemons are very bitter.</td>
<td>off sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fresh</td>
<td>I eat a lot of fresh fruit.</td>
<td>not old and not from a tin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Find the end of each word.

banana / grapesmelonlemonavocadostrawberrycherrypineapplepearorangepeachapple

2 Answer the questions.

1 Are strawberries red or green? red
2 Are peaches sweet or bitter? unknown
3 Are lemons sweet or bitter? bitter
4 Are cherries red or green? red
5 Are grapes big or small? big
6 Is fresh fruit good or bad? good
7 Do mangoes taste sweet or bitter? sweet
8 Are melons big or small? big

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.

Use the cover card to test yourself. Write down new words in a notebook.
B Vegetables

1 potato
2 beans
3 onion
4 carrot
5 cauliflower
6 cabbage
7 peas
8 aubergine
9 courgette
10 mushroom
11 garlic (clove)
12 chilli

lettuce
tomato
cucumber
red and green pepper

raw
frozen
cooked

spotlight salad

A salad can have different raw vegetables in it. It usually has lettuce, and often has tomatoes and cucumber. Red pepper, carrots or onion are also possible. A salad is often part of a meal.

4 Make the names of vegetables from the letters.
▶ sape_p_e_a_s
1 ractor
2 nonio
3 prepep
4 gacabeb
5 naseb
6 routgeget
7 motaot
8 ragcil

5 True or false? Write T or F.
▶ Carrots are small and round. _F_
1 People often eat raw potatoes. 
2 Chillies make your mouth hot. _
3 Lettuce is often frozen. 
4 Cauliflower is white. 
5 Peas are often frozen. 
6 You often have tomatoes in a salad. 
7 Salad is often cooked. 

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
Do you eat these things in your country? Answer ‘Yes, a lot,’ ‘Yes,’ ‘Yes, but not much,’ or ‘No, we don’t.’
1 raw cabbage
2 garlic
3 cherries
4 frozen carrots
5 mushrooms
6 aubergine
7 cucumber
8 avocado
9 mangoes
10 fresh pineapple
11 lettuce
12 courgette

7 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
26 I can buy food in a shop

A Food

milk  b  bread  b  butter  a piece of cheese  e  eggs  u  sugar  u

a cake  j  biscuits  o  olive oil  r  rice  u  pasta  u

olives  noodles  a bar of chocolate  u

spotlight Uncountable nouns

The nouns with a U are usually uncountable:
butter or some butter not a butter/butters
This bread is nice. Not These breads are nice.
We can make uncountable nouns countable:
a piece of cheese  a bar of chocolate

1 Tick (√) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong.

1 some oil  [ ]
2 a milk [ ] milk/some milk
3 biscuits [ ]
4 a piece of cheese [ ]
5 a butter [ ]
6 a cakes [ ]
7 a cheese [ ]
8 some sugar [ ]
9 eggs [ ]
10 a bread [ ]
11 pasta [ ]
12 rices [ ]
13 a jam [ ]
14 olives [ ]

2 Complete the words.

1 mi _
2 some ch _
3 sug _
4 bis _ _ _
5 some olive _ _
6 six e _
7 but _
8 ri _
9 a large bar of ch _
10 noo _

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
B Containers and quantities

a carton of juice  a packet of rice and a packet of biscuits  a jar of jam and a jar of olives

a tin of tomatoes  a can of soda  a bottle of wine  a box of chocolates and a box of matches

Study the pictures for 30 seconds. Cover the pictures. True or false? Write T or F.

4  There's a jar of jam.  T  1  There's a box of chocolates.  
   2  There's a bottle of water.  
   3  There's a packet of sugar.  
   4  There's a can of cola.  
   5  There's a jar of coffee.  
   6  There's a box of matches.  
   7  There's a carton of milk.  
   8  There's a jar of olives.  
   9  There's a tin of peas.  
  10  There's a packet of rice.  

Complete the phrases with a suitable word.

5  Can you buy a packet of rice at the shops, please?
   1  I bought my sister a lovely box of chocolates.
   2  Can I have a bottle of strawberry jam, please?
   3  We need a jar of olive oil.
   4  There's a litre of orange juice in the fridge.
   5  For four people, we'll need a kilo of chicken.
   6  Can I open this bottle of chocolate biscuits?
   7  I'd like 200 grams of ham, please.
   8  I think there's a tin of noodles in the cupboard.
   9  He drinks half a litre of milk for breakfast.
  10  I went out and bought a bottle of wine.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
**C Buying food**

Shop assistant (SA)  
Customer (C)

**C**  
I'd like some cheese, please.

SA  
Sure. What would you like?

**C**  
Dh, that Brie looks nice.

**C**  
Could I have a kilo of onions, please?

SA  
Right. Yes, it is. How much would you like?

**C**  
About 200 grams.

SA  
Right. This piece is just over.

**C**  
That's fine.

SA  
OK. Anything else?

**C**  
No, that's it, thanks.

**7 Complete the dialogues.**

1. A Yes?

   B I'd like six pears, please.

2. A Have you got any apples?

   B Yes. How many would you like?

3. A I'd like some ham, please.

   B How many?

4. A I'd like four, please. Are they ripe?

   SA Yes, they're lovely. Anything else?

   C No, that's all, thanks.

**Glossary**

**Could I have ...?**  
This is another polite way to say 'I want'.

**Have you got any ...?**  
Do you have any...?

**ripe**  
If something is ripe, you can eat it now.

**that's it or that's all**  
I don't want any more things.

**I'd like**  
I would like (This is a polite way to say 'I want'.)

**just over**  
A little more than or just under

**Anything else?**  
Do you want any more things?

**8 Make sentences from the words.**

1. twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I / ?

2. please / some / like / I'd / sugar

3. got / ham / you / any / have / ?

4. much / would / cheese / how / like / you / ?

5. that's / kilo / just / half / a / over

6. oranges / many / like / would / how / you / ?
27 I can order in a café  

Do Unit 26 first

1 (white) coffee
2 black coffee
3 cappuccino
4 espresso
5 tea (with milk)
6 hot chocolate
7 orange juice
8 baguette
9 sandwich (white bread)
10 sandwich (brown bread)
11 toasted sandwich
12 roll

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C) in a café.

W Yes, please?

C I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread, please, and two chicken baguettes.

W Is that to eat here or take away?

C To eat here.

W OK. Anything else?

C Yes, two coffees, please, and a cappuccino.

W OK. The food will be a couple of minutes. Have a seat.

Glossary
I'd like = I would like. (a polite way to say 'I want')
take away = eat in another place (not in the café)
two coffees = two cups of coffee (also two teas, etc.)
a couple of minutes = two or three minutes
have a seat = sit down

character: [A]

Find the end of each word.
1 You can have a roll baguette sandwich toasted sandwich.
2 You can have a cappuccino tea orange juice espresso black coffee.

Complete the phrases.
> a ham sandwich 4 black ________ 8 black or ________ coffee?
1 brown ________ 5 eat here or ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ________ ......
28 I can order in a restaurant  Do Units 25, 26, and 27 first

A The table 🍴

1 glass of red wine  4 oil  7 napkin  11 knife
2 salt and (black) pepper  5 vinegar  8 bowl  12 spoon
3 bottle of mineral water  6 glass of white wine  9 plate  10 fork

Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a (1) f___ k, and a (2) s___ n, and a (3) n___ n for their hands and face. They each have a white (4) p___ e and a (5) b___ l. To drink, there's a (6) b___ e of (7) m___ l w___ r, and two (8) g___ s of (9) w___ e: one (10) r___ d and the other (11) w___ e. There is also some (12) s___ t and (13) b___ k p___ r, and little (14) b___ s of (15) o___ l and (16) v___ r.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about 1 – 12 in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have ________________________________________________

We don’t usually have ________________________________________________

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.

B What shall we have? 🍴

boiled rice  fried eggs  grilled fish  roast chicken

Steak can be: rare  medium  well done
MENU

Starters
Tomato soup
Grilled prawns in soy sauce
Mussels in white wine and garlic

Main courses
Pan fried tuna with green beans
Fillet steak with chips and mushrooms
Roast duck with cabbage and peas
Grilled chicken with boiled potatoes
Cheese tart with mixed salad

Desserts
Apple tart
Ice cream with chocolate sauce

True or false? Write T or F.
1. You eat the starter after the main course. F
2. You eat ice cream with a knife and fork. 
3. You eat the main course before dessert. 
4. Mixed salad can have lettuce and tomato in. 
5. You eat soup and chips in the same bowl. 
6. The list of food to eat is called a menu. 
7. Dessert is the first thing you eat. 
8. You can roast a chicken or a duck. 
9. You can boil rice or potatoes. 
10. You can have cheese tart or apple tart. 

Complete the sentences.
1. I'd like roast chicken. 
2. I love ice cream. 
3. Could I have fillet steak? 
4. I'd like a mixed salad. 
5. What's your main course? 
6. Pass me the soy sauce. 
7. Do you like your steak well done? 
8. I had chicken with boiled rice.

ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers or ask another student.
Which starter would you like? 
Which main course would you like? 
Which dessert would you like? 

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.
C Customer and waiter 🍽️

A waiter (W) is talking to a customer (C).

W Are you ready to order?
C Yes, I'll have the fillet steak.
W And how would you like your steak?
C Rare, please. And I'd like a glass of red wine, and some mineral water.
W Still or sparkling?
C Sparkling.
W Fine.

Later in the meal ...

C Could I have another glass of wine?
W Yes, of course.
C Oh, and some more water, please.
W Certainly.

... W Would you like to see the dessert menu?
C No thanks, but I'll have a coffee. And could I have the bill, please?
W Yes, sure.

8 Circle the correct word.
- I like/I'd like a coffee.
  1 Could I have some more/another potatoes?
  2 Are you ready order/to order?
  3 Do you want another/some more bottle?
  4 We had a delicious meal/food last night.
  5 Yes, course/of course.
  6 Could I have a/the bill, please?
  7 I/I'll have the prawns, please.
  8 Yes, certainly/certain.

9 Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1
W Are you ready to order?
C Yes, I'll have the steak.
W And how would you like it?
C Rare, please. And a bottle of mineral water.
W Yes, of course. Still or sparkling?
C Still, please.

Conversation 2
C Could I have another glass of wine?
W Yes, of course. And would you like a bottle?
C Yes, I'd like a bottle. Have the ice cream. Then could I have the bill?
W Yes, certainly.

Glossary
Are you ready to order? = Do you know what you want to eat?
I'll have steak = I'd like steak, or I want steak.
How would you like your steak? = Would you like your steak rare, medium or well done?
still water water without gas
sparkling water water with gas
meal Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals.
of course/sure/certainly These phrases all mean ‘Yes, no problem.’
the bill a piece of paper which shows the money you must pay for the meal

spotlight another or some more
Say another (= one more) with countable nouns, e.g. another glass/biscuit/apple.
Say some more with uncountable nouns, e.g. some more water/wine/bread.
Review: Food and drink

Unit 24

Put the words in the correct column. Some words go in two columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>chicken ✓</th>
<th>squid</th>
<th>crab</th>
<th>beef</th>
<th>duck</th>
<th>pig</th>
<th>tuna</th>
<th>mussels</th>
<th>pork</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>lamb</td>
<td>salmon</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>prawns</td>
<td>ham</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Meat</th>
<th>Fish</th>
<th>Seafood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>chicken</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 25

1 Write three examples of a fruit or vegetable for each colour.

- red pepper
- yellow
- orange
- white/cream
- green

2 Find four more adjectives, five fruits, and five vegetables in the word square.

```
T A E L ( F R E S H )
M U S H R O O M C
A B I P O T A T O
N E R I P E M B O
G R A P E S E E K
O G W U N A L A E
T I R L E M O N D
O N I O N A N S E
P E A R S W E E T
```
Unit 26

1 Put these foods and drinks into the correct column below. Some words can go into more than one column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Packet</th>
<th>Carton</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Bottle</th>
<th>Jar</th>
<th>Tin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sugar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| sugar |

2 Complete six more phrases or sentences you say or hear in a shop. Use words from the circle. You can use the same word more than once.

Yes, we have.

1 Could __________________________
2 I'd _____________________________
3 Have ___________________________  
4 Anything ________________________
5 That's __________________________
6 How ____________________________

Unit 27

Write the words in the correct order in the dialogue between a waiter (W) and a customer (C).

1 C sandwich / ham / please / toasted / like / a / I'd ___________________________
2 W that / eat / is / here / to / away / take / or / _____________________________
3 C away / please / and / baguette / a / cheese / take ___________________________
4 W else / fine / anything / ? _____________________________
5 C coffee / black / yes / two / a / with / lemon / and / teas ___________________________
6 W be / OK / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple _____________________________
7 W seat / a / have ___________________________
Unit 28

1 Complete the sentences.

- Three meals in the day: breakfast, lunch and ______.

- Three things you eat with: knife, ______, and ______.

- Three parts in a meal: starter, ______, and ______.

- Three ways to cook food: grilled, ______, and ______.

- Three ways to cook steak: rare, ______, and ______.

- Two things you find on a restaurant table: salt and ______.

- Two things you put on salad: oil and ______.

- Two things people drink: red wine and ______.

- Two types of mineral water: still and ______.

2 A waiter (W) and a customer (C) are having a conversation. A word is missing in each line. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

- C Could I see the menu, please?

- W Are you ready to ______.

- C Yes, I have the tomato soup.

- W Right. And for your course ______.

- C Fillet with chips.

- W Do you want red wine or ______ please?

- C Red, please.

- W OK. Is that a ______ or just a glass?

- C At the end of the ______.

- W Could I have the ______, please?

- W Yes, of ______.

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.

Test yourself, using the cover card.
**Bus routes 24 and 16**

**Timetable Monday to Saturday**
Bus 24 every 10 minutes
Bus 16 every 12 minutes
2 minutes every from stop to stop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Excuse me</strong>, which bus do I get to the park?</td>
<td>The 16.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 24 go to the railway station?</td>
<td>No, it doesn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 24 stop near the bank?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the 16 stop outside the park?</td>
<td>Yes, it does.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often does the 16 run?</td>
<td>Every 12 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How many stops is it to the park?</td>
<td>Three.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which is the last stop for the 24?</td>
<td>The bus station.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I get off for the cinema?</td>
<td>At the next stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>How long does it take</strong> to the bus station?</td>
<td>It takes about ten minutes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

**excuse me** We say excuse me when we start talking to someone we don’t know.
**get a bus, train, etc.** travel on a bus, train, etc. (also take)
**go** travel
**near**
**outside**

**run** travel on a route (bus, train)
**every** (12 minutes) e.g. at 1.00, 1.12, 1.24, etc.
**bus stop** the place where you get on or off a bus
**last stop** the bus stop at the end of the route
**get off** leave the bus or get on
**next stop** the first stop after now

**spotlight** How long does it take?
How long? = How much time?
How long does it take (to get) to the station?
~ It takes about 10 minutes.
~ It doesn’t take long. = It takes a short time.
1 Write the words in the correct order to make questions.

- near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the / ? Does the 24 stop near the bank?
- stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the / ?
- school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / 11 / to / do / the / ?
- take / long / how / does / to / railway station / it / the / ?
- post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the / ?
- off / do / get / I / where / cinema / for / the / ?
- park / the 24 / does / to / go / the / ?
- often / run / does / the 24 / how / ?
- which / stop / last / is / for / the / 16 / the / ?

2 Answer the questions in Exercise 1, using the bus information on page 78. Remember, you are at the museum.

- Yes, it does
- ____________ stop.
- ____________ minutes.
- ____________ minutes.
- ____________ minutes.

3 Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 78.

There are two bus routes: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first (1) ____________ is the museum, and the (2) ____________ stop is the cinema; the (3) ____________ stop is the bus station, where everybody has to (4) ____________ the bus. The 16 starts at the museum too, but it (5) ____________ to the railway station. The (6) ____________ tells you how often the buses (7) ____________ . The 24 bus (8) ____________ (9) ____________ ten minutes. It (10) ____________ two minutes to get from the school to the park.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

- Is there a bus stop near your house? If yes, where is it exactly?
- Which buses stop there?
- How often do they run?
- Do you often get the bus? If yes, where to?
- How many stops is it?
- How long does it take?

5 Test yourself. Cover the answers on page 78 and look at the questions and the bus route. Can you answer the questions?

Practise the questions using the CD-ROM.
30 I can get around on trains  Do Unit 29 first

A Train vocabulary

Glossary
- get/take a train  travel by train
- the 12 o'clock train  the train that leaves at 12.00
- journey  when you travel from A to B
- fare  money you pay to travel
- a fast train  OPP a slow train
- (railway) station  a place where trains stop and people get on and off

1 Answer the questions.
   - What's another verb for get a train?  take a train
   1 What's the opposite of a fast train?  a slow train
   2 What's the opposite of get on the train?  get off the train
   3 What's the opposite of miss a train?  catch a train
   4 What's another way of saying the train that leaves at 7?  the 7 o'clock train
   5 What do you sit on in a train?  a seat
   6 Where do you catch a train?  (railway) station

2 Complete the sentences.
   - We can get the 7.45 train.
   1 How much was the train?
   2 Our seats are in the second .
   3 Sorry I'm late. I . the train to Zug.
   4 We can . a train.
   5 The . train is at 12.00p.m.
   6 We . for the train in the café.
   7 Have a look at the .
   8 It's a long . from Lisbon to Paris.

spotlight last
- Last has different meanings:
  1 final  The last train leaves at 11.30 p.m.
  = There are no trains after 11.30 p.m.
  2 most recent  My last train journey was two weeks ago.
Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A passenger (P) is talking to someone at the ticket office (O) at Bristol Station.

P A single to Cardiff, please.
O That's £10, please.
P Right, and when's the next train?
O There's one at 10.07.
P Fine. Do I have to change?
O No, it's direct.
P That's good. And when does it get to Cardiff?
O 10.56.
P OK. And which platform is it?
O Platform 6.
P Right, thanks.

Glossary

passenger a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, car, etc.
ticket office the place where you buy tickets in a station
single or single ticket a ticket for a journey from A to B (A return is a ticket for a journey from A to B, and from B back to A.)
next The next train is the first one after now.
change trains get off one train and get on another
direct A journey is direct if you don't need to change trains.
get to arrive at or in or leave
platform the part of the station where you get on and off the train

Complete the questions using words from the box.

Which platform is it?
1 Can I book in advance?
2 Do you want a single or return?
3 Is the train direct?
4 When do we get to London Paddington?
5 Where's the ticket office?
6 When's the next train?
7 Can I reserve a seat?

Look at the timetable and complete the text.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Cheltenham</th>
<th>Kemble</th>
<th>London Paddington</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>8.35</td>
<td>✅ 9.08</td>
<td>9.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✅ 10.40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I'm going from Cheltenham to London tomorrow. There isn't a direct train, so I have to (1) at Kemble. The train (2) Cheltenham at 8.35 from (3), and it (4) to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to catch the 9.18, which gets (5) London Paddington at 10.40. A (6) ticket costs £22, but I can get a return for £40 if I book in (7).

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 When was your last train journey?
2 Where did you go, and why?
3 What was the fare?
4 Did you book in advance?
5 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains?
I can ask for and give directions

Excuse me. How do I get to the river from here?

Excuse me. Do you know the way to the railway station?

Excuse me. Is there a hotel near here?

spotlight  Excuse me...
It is polite to say excuse me to someone you don’t know when you ask them a question.

Go straight on. OR Just keep going.
It’s about ten minutes.

Go along here and turn left.
The bookshop is opposite the Hotel Plaza.

Go along here and take the second turning on the left.

It’s the third turning on the right.
There’s a cinema on the corner.

Turn right at the café, then left into Abbey Road, and the bank is on your right.

Thanks very much.
1 Make sentences from the words.

- turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.
- excuse / I / get / do / bank / the / me / how / to / ?
- here / left / along / and / turn / go
- bank / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here / ?
- the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third
- way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / bank / the / you / ?
- left / Road / into / Foster / turn

2 Complete the phrases.

- Turn left or right .
- Take the second .
- Thanks very .
- On the .
- Excuse .

3 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

1 A Excuse me . How do I (1) ____________ to the cinema from here?
   B OK. Go (2) ____________ on, and it's the second... no, the third (3) ____________ on the (4) ____________ .
   A Thanks very (5) ____________ .
   B You're welcome.

2 A (1) ____________ me. Is there a post office (2) ____________ here?
   B Yes. Go (3) ____________ here and (4) ____________ the second (5) ____________ on the (6) ____________ .
   The post office is (7) ____________ the bank.
   A (8) ____________ very much.
   B That's OK. No problem.

3 A Excuse me. Do you know the (1) ____________ to the Bonham Hotel?
   B No, I'm sorry, I don't.
   A OK. Thanks... Excuse me. Do you know the Bonham Hotel?
   C Yes. (2) ____________ left (3) ____________ Frith Street and the hotel is on the next (4) ____________ on your (5) ____________ .
   A Thanks very much.
   B Not at all.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words on page 82, and look at the maps. Can you remember the directions?
32 I can talk about roads and traffic

A In town 🌟

Circle the correct answer.

1. traffic park/light
2. petrol station/jam
3. speed light/camera
4. road camera/sign
5. main sign/road
6. pedestrian crossing/park
7. traffic jam/crossing
8. main road
9. petrol station
10. traffic light(s)

Complete the sentences.

1. You can go – the traffic _______ is green.
2. Where’s the nearest petrol ________?
3. We live on a noisy _______ road.
4. Can you read that road ________?
5. The car ______ was full, so we parked on the street.
6. Drivers have to stop at a pedestrian ________.
7. Be careful! There are ________ cameras on the main road.
8. At the ________, do we go left, right or straight on?
9. The ________ is always bad between 8 a.m. and 10 a.m.
10. Walk on the ________, not in the road!
11. Drive slowly and turn left at the next ________.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
Beth (B) and Marco (M) are talking.

M How far is it from London to Bath?
B It’s about 115 miles. That’s 185 kilometres.
M And what’s the best way to get there?
B Right. Take the M4 motorway from London. At junction 18, take the A46. It’s ten miles from there.
M Thanks. And what’s the speed limit on motorways here?
B 70 miles an hour. That’s about 110 kilometres an hour.
M OK. And are they very busy?
B Yes, and you get traffic jams in the rush hour – especially when there’s an accident.
M But you still use the motorway?
B Yes, because there are three lanes on most motorways in Britain, so it’s easy to overtake.
Oh, and Marco – remember to drive on the left!

4 Cover the glossary. Write the words for the meanings.

- The part of the road where cars travel, with white lines. Lane
- A large, fast road between two towns. Motorway
- The busy time when people go to work. Rush hour
- Pass another car by driving faster. Overtake
- The fastest speed you are permitted to go. Speed limit
- When something bad happens, e.g. cars crash. Accident
- The opposite of a busy road. Quiet

5 Complete the sentences.

- You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
  1 It’s a very fast road in the rush hour.
  2 Go into the fast lane when you overtake other cars on the motorway.
  3 How far is it from Paris to Marseille? – It’s 740 kms.
  4 The best way to get to the airport is to go on the M25. Oh, remember to drive on the left!

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

- How many lanes do motorways have?
- What’s the speed limit on motorways?
- Do you have speed cameras on roads?
- Do you drive on the left in your country?
- When’s the rush hour?
### I can understand signs and notices

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign or notice</th>
<th>Where?</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ladies gents toilet</td>
<td>in a bar, restaurant, train, plane, etc.</td>
<td>[WC]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>entrance or way in</td>
<td>in a car park, museum, cinema, etc.</td>
<td>Go in here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exit or way out</td>
<td></td>
<td>Go out or leave here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no entry</td>
<td></td>
<td>You can't go in here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no exit</td>
<td></td>
<td>You can't go out here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no smoking</td>
<td>in a cinema, restaurant, etc.</td>
<td>You can't smoke here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no parking</td>
<td>in the street, or in front of a garage or entrance</td>
<td>You can't leave your car here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please do not disturb</td>
<td>hotel room door</td>
<td>I'm sleeping, so don't come in.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queue here</td>
<td>at a cash desk in a shop, or in a bank or post office</td>
<td>Wait in a line here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing to declare</td>
<td>at an airport</td>
<td>you have no tax to pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>in a shop window</td>
<td>period when a shop sells things at a lower price than normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out of order</td>
<td>on a public telephone, drinks machine, etc.</td>
<td>This isn't working. or It's broken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please ring for attention</td>
<td>at reception in a hotel, office, etc.</td>
<td>Ring the bell and somebody will come.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no vacancies</td>
<td>in the window of a small hotel</td>
<td>The hotel is full.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1 – 9 with a – j.
   - No smoking ______
   - No parking ______
   - Toilet ______
   - Queue here ______
   - Out of order ______
   - Please do not disturb ______
   - Sale ______
   - Entrance ______
   - No vacancies ______
   - Please ring for attention ______
   
   a. in a hotel reception
   b. on a hotel room door
   c. on a drinks machine
d. in a café ✓
e. in a shop window
   f. in front of a garage
g. in a hotel window
   h. at the back of a restaurant
   i. at the front door of a museum
   j. inside a post office

2. Complete the signs in different ways.
   - No smoking ______
   - No ______
   - Way ______
   - Please ______
   - Nothing to ______

3. Test yourself. Cover the signs and look at the meanings. Say the signs.
Review: Getting around

Unit 29

Correct the mistakes.

Where do I get off the bus for the park?

1. This bus go to The National Museum?
2. How many stopping is it to the railway station?
3. Excuse, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4. How long does it make to get to the centre?
5. Does the 31 stop next the post office?
6. Does the 9 stop outside from the school?
7. The which bus do I get to Queen Street?
8. Do the buses run all ten minutes?
9. How long time does it take to the centre?
10. What often do the buses run?

Unit 30

1. Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word.
   What is it?

   1. The part of the station where you get on or get off a train.
   2. The opposite of slow.
   3. If you get to the station late, you could __________________ your train.
   4. Book (a seat).
   5. This tells you when the trains arrive and leave.
   6. When you travel from one place to another.
   7. Part of the train where people sit.
   8. A single or return __________________ .
   9. Money you pay to travel.
   
   The letters in the grey squares make the word __________________ .
2 Complete the dialogue between the passenger (P) and the assistant (A) about the train journey from Bristol to Manchester. It's 9.30. The passenger is in Bristol.

P Single to Manchester, please.
A That's £40, please.
P When's the 1? 9.58.
A 9.58.
P Is it 2? No, you have to 3 at Birmingham.
A OK. And when does the Manchester train 4? 11.48.
A At 11.48.
P And when does it 5 Manchester?
A 1.23 p.m.
P Right, and which 6 is that?
A Four.

Unit 31

1 A word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.

- Take the second turning, the left. On ___
- The bank is on right. ___
- How do I get the river? ___
- Go along and turn left. ___
- Go straight and turn right. ___
- Excuse. Do you know the way to the bank? ___
- Yes, it's the corner of this street ___

2 Cross out one word in each sentence to make the sentences correct.

- Turn right into the Duke Street.
  1 The bank is opposite of the hotel.
  2 Go straight on and keep to going.
  3 Is there a post office near from here?
  4 It's on the your left.
  5 Turn to left and go straight on.
  6 It's the third turning on the right side.
Unit 32

1 Tick (✓) true or false.

TRUE FALSE

✓ You put money in a traffic light.
1 A motorway is bigger than a main road.
2 You walk on a pedestrian crossing.
3 You drive your car on the pavement.
4 Road signs tell you what to do.
5 Roads are quiet in the rush hour.
6 You can get a train at a petrol station.
7 If there's a traffic jam, the roads are busy.
8 Motorways have more than one lane.
9 It's a good idea to overtake at a junction.
10 Cars drive round a circle at a roundabout.

2 Complete the radio traffic information.

We are getting reports of an accident on the M40 m near Oxford. We understand a blue Mercedes travelling over the s lost control when it was trying to o a bus, and hit two other cars. The police are now at the scene of the a, and say the fast l of the motorway will be closed for at least an hour. This will mean long t during the r h, and the police are telling drivers to keep away from the motorway if possible and to t a different route into Oxford.

Unit 33

Complete the dialogues.

✓ Do we pay for things here? ~ I think so. It says ,
1 Can I leave my car here? ~ No, the sign says .
2 Can we go in here? ~ Yes, that sign says .
3 Let's stay in this hotel. ~ We can't. Look, it says .
4 Can we clean this bedroom now? ~ No, it's says .
5 Is everything cheaper here this week? ~ Yes, look, it says in the window.
6 Can I use that telephone? ~ No, it says it's .
7 Can we go out here? ~ No, that sign says .
8 Can I have a cigarette? ~ No. It says .
Brazil is enormous. The Atlantic coast is more than 3,000 kilometres long, and in the north, south, and west, there are borders with ten different countries. The longest river is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres high: it's the highest mountain in Brazil. The capital, Brasilia, is inland, but many of the major cities are on the coast. The most famous is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugar Loaf mountain, Corcovado, and some great beaches. It is very popular with tourists.

1 Study the map of Brazil for one minute, then complete the sentences.
   1 The town in the north is __________.
   2 The capital is __________.
   3 The longest river is the __________.
   4 The highest mountain is __________.
   5 In the south, it has a border with __________.
   6 In the north, it has a border with __________.
   7 A popular city with tourists is __________.
   8 It's famous for Sugar Loaf __________.
   9 Brasilia isn't near the sea; it's __________.
   10 Rio is on the __________.

2 Test yourself. Don’t look at Exercise 1. What can you say about these places?
   1 The Amazon
   2 Pico da Neblina
   3 Brasilia
   4 Porto Alegre
   5 Argentina
   6 Rio de Janeiro

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.
   1 What's the capital, and where is it?
   2 What are some of the other major cities?
   3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they?
   4 Which places are popular in summer?
   5 What are the famous places in your capital city?
A Buildings and places in a town

- castle
- palace
- statue
- square
- cathedral
- church
- temple
- mosque
- market
- bridge
- park
- museum

Correct the spelling mistakes.

1. museum
2. bridge
3. square
4. cathedral
5. parque
6. museom
7. bilding

Complete the sentences.

1. My sister got married in our little ___________.
2. I think Buddhists use that ___________.
3. The ___________ is the best place to see the river.
4. The ___________ is the cheapest place to buy food.
5. You can learn about the history of the town in the local ___________.
6. You can see children playing in the ___________ from my hotel window.
7. There is a ___________ of Nelson Mandela in the main ___________.
8. The ___________ and ___________ are both open to visitors from 10 until 5.
9. The square is a nice ___________ to sit and watch people.

Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the pictures.
**B Facts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>size</th>
<th>It's a</th>
<th>big/large</th>
<th>medium-sized</th>
<th>small</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>in the north-east of Poland</td>
<td>50km west of Moscow</td>
<td>on the coast</td>
<td>on a river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>population</td>
<td>It's</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>just under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting facts</td>
<td>It's</td>
<td>famous for its cathedral</td>
<td>modern</td>
<td>industrial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It has</td>
<td>lots of historic buildings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

**fact** a piece of true information  
**size** how big or small something is  
**city** a very large town, e.g. 2 million people  
**town** smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people  
**village** smaller than a town, e.g. 1,000 people, and in the countryside  
**location** the place where something is, e.g. 50 kms from Rome  
**population** the number of people who live in a place  
over 1 mile more than 1 mile  
**just under** a little under (also just over)  
**modern** of the present, old  
**industrial** having a lot of industry, e.g. making cars or steel  
**historic** important in history

4 Write the phrases in the correct columns.

| in the north-east | on the coast | famous for historic buildings | over two million |
| an industrial town | just under 50,000 | on the River Duero | a small village |
| south-west of the capital | about 3,000 | a large city | a medium-sized town |

5 Complete the text about Turin.

Turin is a large city, 140 km south-west of Milan, 140 km south-west of the north-west of Italy. It is on the River Po and three other rivers. The city is just one million (in fact, it is 908,000). It is an industrial city: the car makers, Fiat, are based here, for example, but it also has many historic buildings, including palaces and castles.

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write a similar text about your city/town/village.
C Opinions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td><em>What's your opinion of the new cathedral? ~ I think it's wonderful.</em></td>
<td>Your opinion is what you think about something; it is not a fact.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td><em>It's busy in the summer when the tourists arrive.</em></td>
<td>If a place is busy, it is full of people, cars, and activity. Opp quiet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded</td>
<td><em>The bars get very crowded in the evenings.</em></td>
<td>Full of people or too full of people</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polluted</td>
<td><em>It's very polluted because of all the industry. The buildings are very dirty.</em></td>
<td>A polluted place has dirty air, water, etc. Off clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td><em>London and New York are very cosmopolitan cities.</em></td>
<td>Having people from many different countries living there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's lots to do</td>
<td><em>There's lots to do in the evening — discos, cinemas, and so on.</em></td>
<td>= there are many activities and places to visit or there's nothing to do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nightlife</td>
<td><em>The nightlife in my town is very good.</em></td>
<td>Places to go in the evening: bars, clubs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe</td>
<td><em>It's safe during the day but can be dangerous at night.</em></td>
<td>Free from danger. If a town is safe, you don't need lots of police. Off dangerous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (√) yes or no.

- 'The streets are very dirty.'
- 'I think it's very polluted, don't you?'
- 'There's lots to do during the day.'
- 'I think the nightlife is great.'
- 'There's nothing to do at night.'
- 'It's so clean on the coast.'
- 'I always feel safe at night.'
- 'It's a really dangerous city.'

8 Complete the dialogue.

A What's your opinion of Walton?
B Well, there are people from all over the world, so it's very (1) ___ — I love that.
A Yes, but is it safe?
B Well, every city is a bit (2) ______ at night, but there's a lot to (3) ______ here, and the (4) ________ is very good — lots of bars and clubs.
A And is it very busy in the centre?
B It's OK on weekdays, but it gets very (5) ______ at the weekends, with all the tourists. The centre is also quite dirty; the river is (6) ________ because of the industry.

9 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write your opinions, or ask another student.

1 Is your city/town/village a safe place to live, or is it dangerous?
2 What is there to do during the day?
3 Is it usually busy or quiet?
4 What about the nightlife?
5 Is it a very cosmopolitan place?
6 Is it a nice place to live?
A On the farm

Jack Robson is a farmer. He owns Eatwell Farm. He grows fruit and a few other crops.

Glossary

own If you own something, it is yours.

grow Farmers grow potatoes, rice, etc. to sell.

a few some; not a lot

crop a plant a farmer grows and sells, e.g. rice, apples

1 Look at the picture and the text. True or false? Write T or F.

1 There's a lake near the trees. ______
2 There is nothing in the field. ______
3 The farmer's in the boat. ______
4 The path goes to the lake. ______
5 The dog lives on the farm. ______
6 The horse is eating the grass. ______
7 The sky's grey. ______
8 There are a lot of chickens. ______
9 The farmer grows fruit. ______

2 Complete the words. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 3.)

Do you live near a wood?  
1 Do you live in a valley or on a hill? ______
2 Can you see any grass where you are now? ______
3 Can you see a field where you are now? ______
4 Are there any trees near your home? ______
5 Do you own a dog or a horse? ______
6 What crops do people grow where you live? ______
7 Do you know any farmers?

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Answer the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Can you remember the words?
In the countryside, I live alone in a beautiful area. In the mornings, it is so quiet, I sit and listen to the birds—it's wonderful. I've got a garden with lots of flowers and I grow all my fruit and vegetables, so I only eat fresh food, which is very healthy. The big problem is that public transport is terrible, but I've got a bike if I need to go to town. And it's a bit lonely too, but I can always talk to Jack at Eatwell Farm, and sometimes I look after his chickens for him.

**Glossary**

- **area** a part of a town, country or the world
- **the countryside** a place with fields, woods, farms, etc. that is outside towns or cities
- **bird**
- **wonderful** very good
- **terrible**
- **flower**
- **fresh food** food taken from the tree or plant; not old or from a tin
- **healthy** if something is healthy, it helps to keep you well. If a person is healthy, they are well.
- **public transport** system of buses and trains
- **bike** (also bicycle) you ride a bike or go somewhere by bike
- **look after** if you look after an animal, you give it food and see that it is healthy.

**Spotlight: alone and lonely**

Alone and lonely mean 'not with other people'. If you are lonely, you aren't happy about it. If you are alone, you can be happy or unhappy.

She likes living alone. **Not** She likes living lonely. She's lonely. = She would like to have more friends.

**Exercise 5**

Is the meaning of the underlined words/phrases the same or different? Write S or D.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>These carrots are fresh/clean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>She's looking at/looking after the dog.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I think city life is wonderful/terrible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Have you got a bike/bicycle?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Are you alone/lonely at the moment?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>She's healthy/very well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>He lives in the countryside/on a farm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>He rides his bike to work/goes to work by bike.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Exercise 6**

Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: some sentences have two mistakes.

1. I sometimes have to look after children. **after**
2. I often buy floweres. **flowers**
3. I love the countryside. **lovely**
4. I'm very helthy. **healthy**
5. I see lots of bridrs in my area. **birds**
6. Our public transporte is wonderfull. **transport**
7. I'm often alon in the evening. **alone**
8. I eat fraish fruit every day. **fresh**
9. I never feel lonley. **lonely**

**Exercise 7**

Are the sentences in Exercise 6 true about you? If not, change them to make them true.
A Places to shop

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Places</th>
<th>What they sell</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>market</strong> (a number of stalls, outdoors or indoors)**</td>
<td>food, sometimes furniture, CDs, books, flowers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shopping centre</strong> (a number of shops, usually indoors)**</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>department store</strong> (a large shop)**</td>
<td>almost everything, but not usually food: beds, books, televisions, clothes, perfume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>supermarket</strong> (a large shop)**</td>
<td>the same as a supermarket, but also clothes, TVs, furniture. Hypermarkets are outside towns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>butcher’s</strong></td>
<td>meat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>baker’s</strong></td>
<td>bread and cakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>chemist’s</strong></td>
<td>medicine, e.g. aspirin, also soap, shampoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>deli (catessen)</strong></td>
<td>sandwiches, bread, cheese, ham, coffee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>paper shop or newsagent’s</strong></td>
<td>newspapers, chocolates, cigarettes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Three answers are correct. Circle the wrong answer.

1. I got the vegetables from the... **supermarket**  
   1. got the bread from the... **hypermarket**  
   2. got the meat from the... **supermarket**  
   3. got these jeans from a... **market**  
   4. got this shampoo from the... **deli**  
   5. got the cheese from a... **supermarket**  
   6. got these CDs from the... **shopping centre**

Write two things you can buy in each of these places.

1. **department store**  
   bed                  television

2. **deli**  
   chemist’s

3. **market**  
   newsagent’s

Test yourself. Cover ‘Places’ and look at ‘What they sell’. Can you remember the names of the shops and shopping places?
B Shopping habits

Hypermarkets are so convenient – you can get everything in one place.

I do the supermarket shopping on Thursdays when it’s quiet.

Supermarkets are so busy at the weekend. I don’t like queueing at the checkout!

You can choose from a lot of different things in a supermarket, but I prefer markets. They’re friendlier.

There are six of us in my family, so I fill two trolleys every week!

I get a lot of things on the internet. They always deliver to your home.

Glossary

convenient  easy and quick to use
get  buy
do (the) shopping  buy food and things you need often, e.g. soap
queue  wait in a line of people
checkout  the place in a supermarket where you pay
choose  decide which thing you want
prefer  like something or someone more than another
fill  make something full (The trolley in the picture is full.)
trolley

basket
deliver  take things to a person or a place

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you have a car, supermarkets are very convenient. ___
  1. You can’t get CDs in a hypermarket. ___
  2. You can fill a trolley or a basket. ___
  3. You go to clothes shops to do the shopping. ___
  4. You sometimes have to queue when you want to pay. ___
  5. You can choose from a lot of different things in small shops. ___
  6. You pay at the checkout in a supermarket. ___
  7. At a supermarket, you put the things you want to buy in a trolley or basket. ___
  8. All shops will deliver the things you buy to your home. ___

5 Complete the words in the questions. (You will answer the questions in Exercise 6.)

1. When do you or your family usually do the s_________? ___
2. Do you p_________ supermarkets or small shops? ___
3. Do you often have to q_________ at the checkout? ___
4. Do you think supermarkets are co_________? ___
5. Do supermarkets in your town d_________ things to your home? ___
6. Where do you g_________ your fruit and vegetables? ___

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 5 or ask another student.
38 I can talk about my home

A Flats 🏡

I live in a block of flats near the town centre, in an area called Montpellier. I really like the flat, and my neighbour, Simon, is very friendly.

1 (on) the top floor
2 (on) the second floor
3 (on) the first floor
4 (on) the ground floor
5 garden
6 steps
7 (in) the basement
8 rubbish
9 front door
10 stairs
11 lift
12 flat
13 balcony

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 Helen lives on the second floor.
2 John and Lucy live on the ground floor.
3 Miki lives on the top floor.
4 Anna lives on the first floor.
5 They put their rubbish in the lift.

5 Simon lives in the basement.
6 Ferdy’s flat has got a balcony.
7 Rob’s flat has got a garden.
8 The steps are at the front door.
9 Ferdy needs to use the stairs or lift.

2 Complete the words.

1 b__ t
2 b__ k of f__ s
3 g__ d f__ r
4 f__ t d__ r
5 s__ s

6 g__ n
7 s__ s
8 n__ r
9 b__ y
10 t__ n c__ e

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the things in the picture.
B Houses

BATHFORD
Modern family house in this quiet village with lovely views of the countryside. Large living room, dining room, study, modern kitchen and utility room. Upstairs there are four good-sized bedrooms and a family bathroom. Outside there is a large garden, a garage, and further parking for two cars.

Find the end of each word.
study, view, modern, living room, toilet, kitchen, home, parking, dining room, upstairs, bedroom, utility room, bathroom

Complete the text.
I live in a modern house – it’s only four years old. It’s got a (1) __________ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) __________. It’s in the town centre, and from the living room I’ve only got a (3) __________ of the railway station, which isn’t very nice. I leave my car on the street because I don’t have a (4) __________, but it’s got a small (5) __________, so I can eat (6) __________ when it’s warm.

My brother’s got a house in a village near me, and from the house he’s got fantastic (7) __________ of the countryside. Downstairs there’s a living room, dining room, large (8) __________ and a (9) __________ where my brother works. (10) __________ there are four (11) __________ and two (12) __________, so there’s lots of space when I visit with friends. There’s also (13) __________ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer they eat (14) __________ all the time.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
1. Do you live in a house or a flat?
2. If it’s a flat, which floor are you on?
3. Have you got a garden? If so, how big is it?
4. What’s the view? Is it nice?
5. Have you got parking?
6. What rooms have you got in your home?
39 I can describe a kitchen

A In the kitchen

1 shelf plural shelves
2 tap (turn the tap on/off)
3 cup(s)
4 microwave
5 frying pan
6 freezer
7 sink
8 saucer(s)
9 hob
10 saucepan
11 (rubbish) bin
   The bin is full
12 oven
13 fridge
14 washing machine
15 cupboard
16 dishwasher
17 cooker

1 Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.

- Put the milk in the \textit{fridge}.
- Put those dirty clothes in the \textit{washing machine}.
- Put the dirty plates in the \textit{dishwasher} or the \textit{sink}.
- Put the cups and \textit{saucers} in the \textit{cupboard}.
- Put the books on the \textit{shelves}.
- Put the empty packets in the \textit{bin}.
- Cook the eggs in the \textit{frying pan}.
- Is the rubbish bin \textit{full}?
- Heat the soup in the \textit{microwave} or on the \textit{hob}.
- Could you turn the \textit{tap} off?
- Boil the potatoes in that \textit{saucepan}.

2 \textbf{ABOUT YOU} Write down anything in the picture you haven’t got.

- I haven’t got a microwave, and my \textit{washing machine} isn’t in the kitchen.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.
B Using the kitchen

Housework
1 do the shopping
2 put the shopping away
   (= in the cupboards, fridge, etc)
3 put the dirty clothes in the
   washing machine; turn it on
4 clean the cooker
5 take the washing (= the clothes)
   out of the washing machine
6 make a sandwich
7 empty the bin
8 do the ironing
9 cook lunch for the family
10 do the washing-up

spotlight do + noun

These phrases are very common in spoken English: do the shopping, do the washing-up,
do the housework, do the ironing

Be careful!

housework = cleaning the house
homework = work teachers give students to do after class

4 Complete the text.

Saturday is my day for doing the housework. First, I go to town and do the (1) _________.
Then I come back, (2) ________ everything (3) _________ in the cupboards, and (4) _________
the bin. If the kitchen’s dirty, I (5) _________ it, and then I (6) _________ a cup of tea. My sister
usually helps me. She (7) _________ all the dirty clothes in the washing machine and (8) _________
the washing out when it’s finished. I (9) _________ lunch, but afterwards, we do the
(10) _________-__________ together. When the clothes are dry, I do the (11) _________.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

In your home ...
1 Who does the shopping? ___________ 4 Who cleans the kitchen? ___________
2 Who cooks the dinner? ___________ 5 Who empties the bin? ___________
3 Who does the washing-up? ___________ 6 Who does the ironing? ___________

6 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. Say the words.
40 I can describe a bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom and bathroom 🌟

International student house

Our rooms are all newly furnished, and include: a **single bed**, **bedside table**, desk and chair, **chest of drawers**, and **wardrobe**.

There are three bathrooms on each floor: each has a **bath**, **shower**, **washbasin**, **mirror**, **toilet**, and **bidet**.

We provide **blankets**, but students must bring their own **sheets** and **towels**.

---

1 One word is different. Which one?

- **bedside table** toilet wardrobe
  - Toilet **is** different. The other two are in a bedroom.

- bath shower mirror
  - ____________ is different. You can wash in the other two.

- wardrobe desk chest of drawers
  - ____________ is different. You put clothes in the other two.

- blanket desk chest of drawers
  - ____________ is different. The other two are pieces of furniture.

- bed chest of drawers bidet
  - ____________ is different. The other two are in a bedroom.

- wardrobe toilet washbasin
  - ____________ is different. The other two are in a bathroom.

- towel blanket sheet
  - ____________ is different. The other two are on a bed.

2 Write in the missing letter.

- **dek** desk
- ____________

- **beside table** 
- ____________

- **miror**
- ____________

- **ath**
- ____________

- **chest of drawes**
- ____________

- **wasbasin**
- ____________

- **toilet**
- ____________

- **wadrobe**
- ____________

- **bide**
- ____________

- **blanke**
- ____________

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about your bedroom and bathroom.

In my bedroom, there's _______________________________________________________________________

In my bathroom, there's _______________________________________________________________________

4 Test yourself. Cover the text and look at the pictures. Say the words for 1–14.
B In the bathroom

have a wash, you use soap. u

clean your teeth, you use toothpaste u and a toothbrush.

wash your hair, you use shampoo. u

When you ...

have a shave, you use a razor or an electric razor.

do your hair, you use a brush or a comb.

put on or take off make-up, you use make-up u and tissues.

You can also put on or wear perfume. u

5 Circle the correct word.

I wash/clean my teeth with toothpaste/a comb.
1 I do/put on my hair with a razor/a brush.
2 Do you have/do a bath every day?
3 She puts on/has make-up when she goes out.
4 Do you often have a shave/wash with an electric razor?
5 He washes/cleans his hair with expensive perfume/shampoo.
6 When you take off make-up you use tissues/a comb.

6 Write a, an or nothing (-).

I don't use __________ make-up.
1 I need _______ new comb.
2 Do you want _______ tissue?
3 I never use _______ perfume.
4 I must buy _______ brush.

5 I buy _______ shampoo every week.
6 Have you got _______ electric razor?
7 I just use _______ soap.
8 I need _______ new toothbrush and _______ toothpaste.

7 ABOUT YOU Tick (✓) a or b. Then if possible tell another student your answers.

1 a I usually have a bath.
   b I usually have a shower.
2 a I clean my teeth before breakfast.
   b I clean my teeth after breakfast.
3 a I wash my hair twice a week or less.
   b I wash my hair more than twice a week.
4 a I usually use a brush on my hair.
   b I usually use a comb on my hair.

For women:
5 a I often wear perfume.
   b I don't wear perfume very much.
6 a I usually wear make-up.
   b I don't wear make-up very much.

For men:
7 a I use an electric razor.
   b I don't use an electric razor.
I can describe a living room

An armchair, a sofa and a coffee table are furniture or pieces of furniture.

Look at the picture. True or false? Write T or F.

In the living room, there is only one...

- TV
- picture
- light
- lamp
- window
- wall
- curtains
- TV/television
- picture
- bookshelves
- radiator

Complete the words.

- w i n dow
- or
- pet
- h i on
- radiator
- fa e
- le
- tains
- hair

ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers or ask another student.

1. How many windows have you got in your living room? ____________________________
2. Have you got radiators, a fireplace or both? ________________________________
3. What have you got on the floor? ______________________________
4. What's on the walls? ____________________________________________
5. Are the lights on the ceiling or the walls? ________________________________
6. What furniture have you got? ____________________________________________

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the picture. Say the words.
Review: Places

Unit 34

Complete the sentences.
1. Moscow is in the west ______ of Russia.
2. Milan is in the ______ of Italy.
3. Bangkok is in the ______ of Thailand.
4. San Francisco is on the west ______ and New York is on the east ______ of the USA.
5. China is an ______ (very big) country.
6. Paris is the ______ of France.
7. The Nile is the longest ______ in the world.
8. Fujiyama is the highest ______ in Japan.
9. Bondi is a long ______ in Australia.
10. Brazil is ______ for Samba, football, and Carnival.

Unit 35

1. Write the opposite.
   - north ______
   - south ______
   - an old city ______
   - safe ______
   - under a million ______
   - there’s lots to do ______
   - a busy street ______
   - polluted ______

2. Complete the texts.
   A. Granada is quite a ______ town about 350 km south (1) ______ Madrid. It has a (2) ______ of about 300,000 people. It’s an old town with lots of (3) ______ buildings, and a famous (4) ______ called The Alhambra. It’s a very popular (5) ______ with tourists.
   B. New York is a big (6) ______, which is (7) ______ the Atlantic coast. It’s (8) ______ for a number of things: the (9) ______ of Liberty, Times (10) ______, and Central (11) ______. It is a (12) ______ city, with people of many nationalities.

Unit 36

1. Complete the crossword.
   - Part of a town, country or the world. ______
   - You see this between two hills. ______
   - ______ food is good for you.
   - You go on this on a river. ______
   - A person who grows crops to sell. ______
   - Horses eat this. ______
   - A place where you walk between fields. ______
   - A large area of water with land around it. ______
   - Not with other people. ______
2 Complete the crossword.

1 A place with a lot of trees. wood
2 An animal you can ride.  
3 Farmers _______ potatoes, rice, etc.
4 Plants that farmers look after and then sell for food.  
5 Unhappy because you are not with other people.  
6 If you _______ something, it is yours.  
7 A place with fields, farms, woods, etc. outside towns and cities.  

Unit 37

1 Complete the words.

1 A shop where you get sandwiches, coffee, bread, etc. is a deli.  
2 A place with shops which is indoors is a supermarket.  
3 A shop where you buy newspapers, chocolates, etc. is a newsagent.  
4 A shop where you get medicine, shampoo, etc. is a chemist.  
5 A large shop which sells food, things for cleaning, etc. is a supermarket or a hypermarket.  
6 A shop where you buy bread and cakes is a bakery.  
7 A shop where you buy meat is a butcher.  
8 A large shop where you can buy almost anything: clothes, beds, etc. is a department store.  
9 A place where you can buy CDs, DVDs, etc. is a music shop.  

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares make a different word. What is it?

1 where you buy books bookshop  
2 wait in a line of people  
3 buy the things you need: do the shopping  
4 easy and quick to use  
5 like something more than another thing  
6 a shopping place outdoors where different people sell you food, books, etc.  
7 you find these in a market  
8 the opposite of ‘outdoors’  
9 in a supermarket, you put things in a trolley or a cart  
10 buy  

The word in the grey squares is shop.
Unit 38

1 Here are some definitions. What are the words?
   - The room where you talk and watch TV. **living room**
   - The room where you wash and have a shower. __________________
   - The room where you cook food. __________________
   - The room where you sleep. __________________
   - The room where you do work/homework. __________________
   - The place where you put the car. __________________
   - The thing that takes you from one floor to another floor. __________________
   - The place outside your house where there are trees and flowers. __________________
   - The place where you live (a flat or a house). __________________

2 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.
   - quiet ______ a. floor
   - front ______ b. views
   - lovely ______ c. of flats
   - ground ______ d. village  
   - modern ______ e. centre
   - dining ______ f. door
   - parking ______ g. house
   - block ______ h. for two cars
   - town ______ i. room

Unit 39

1 Write your answers.
   - You boil vegetables in this. **saucepan**
   - You wash plates and cups in this. __________________ or __________________
   - You wash clothes in this. __________________
   - You put rubbish in this. __________________
   - You cook food very quickly in this. __________________
   - You put clean plates, cups, and saucers here. __________________
   - You keep milk and cold drinks in this. __________________
   - You put ice cream in this. __________________
   - You cook meat slowly in this. __________________

2 Complete the sentences.
   - Do ______________ the shopping on the way home.
   - Come home and ______________ the shopping in the cupboards or the fridge.
   - ______________ the dirty washing in the machine, and ______________ it on.
   - Forty minutes later, ______________ the machine off and take the washing ______________.
   - ______________ the washing-up and ______________ the bin.
   - Finally, ______________ lunch.
Unit 40

1 Put these words in two groups, and give a name to each group.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wardrobe</th>
<th>towel</th>
<th>toilet</th>
<th>blanket</th>
<th>sheet</th>
<th>chest of drawers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shower</td>
<td>washbasin</td>
<td>single bed</td>
<td>desk</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>bidet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1

2 Complete the questions, then answer them.

1 What do you use when you wash your hair?
   Answer: shampoo

2 What do you use when you make-up?
   Answer:

3 What do you use when you shave?
   Answer:

4 What do you use when you brush your teeth?
   Answer:

5 What do you use when you wash your hair?
   Answer:

Unit 41

Look at the two pictures. Write down ten more differences.

- Picture 1 has got a sofa, but picture 2 hasn't.

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10
1. Complete the words.
   1. art
   2. geography
   3. biology
   4. PE
   5. design and technology
   6. maths
   7. chemistry
   8. music

2. Write the name of a school subject.
   1. Beethoven, jazz, music
   2. football, gym
   3. computers
   4. Spanish, German
   5. church, mosque, etc.
   6. CO₂, H₂O
   7. Picasso, Monet

3. ABOUT YOU Circle the correct verb form. Complete the sentences about yourself.
   1. At school, I’m/I was good at ____________
   2. I’m/I was quite good at ____________
   3. I’m/I was terrible at ____________
   4. We don’t/didn’t study ____________
   5. The subject I like/liked most is/was ____________

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the subjects.
B The education system

Education in England and Wales

You can...

- start nursery school at 3
- go to primary school at 5
- go to secondary school at 11 (state school or private school)
- stay at school until 18
- leave school at 16
- go to university
- get a job

Some pupils (= schoolchildren up to the age of 16) wear a uniform.

5 Put the story in order.
   - a where he learnt to read and write.
   - b He stayed there until he was sixteen,
   - c When Tom was three,
   - d and then he went to college.
   - e After that, he went to secondary school.
   - f He left college when he was 18
   - g At the age of five,
   - h he started nursery school.
   - i he went to primary school,
   - j and got a job in a bank.

6 Complete the questions, but don’t write answers.

- At what age do children go to nursery school?
  1 When do they start primary school?
  2 Do they usually wear a uniform at primary school?
  3 When do they start secondary school?
  4 When can they leave school and get a job?
  5 Do they go to state, private, or both schools?

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6 or ask another student.

GLOSSARY

- start school go to a new school for the first time
- state school a school where education is free
- private school
- stay at school go to school for a period of time (also continue at school)
- until up to that time (‘I was there until 3.00.’ means ‘after 3.00, I went away.’)
- college place where you can study after you leave school
- leave school stop going to school
- uniform special clothes that children wear in a school

SPOTLIGHT at (the age of) ...

Children go to school at 5 (or at the age of 5). = Children go to primary school when they are five (years old).
When I was at secondary school, I went to all the lessons and did my homework, but I didn’t work very hard. So, when I took exams at 16, my results weren’t fantastic. I passed six, which was good, but I failed maths. My worst result was physics – I got a grade E, which was terrible. After that, I went to a sixth form college where I worked hard and did well. I passed all my exams at 18 and went to university. That’s where I am now.

Look at Rafael’s exam results on the right and answer the questions.

How many exams did he take? 7.
1 Did he take an exam in chemistry? French
2 How many did he pass? IT
3 How many did he fail? Geography, Biology
4 What was his best grade? English
5 What was his worst grade? History
6 What did he get in English?

Complete the questions.
Six out of ten isn’t a very good mark.
1 I have to _______ an English exam tomorrow.
2 Did you _______ your homework last night?
3 Paula did very _______ in her German exam; she got a _______. A.
4 I got my exam _______ yesterday. I passed all of them.
5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He’s doing _______ at school, and last week he _______ an important maths exam.
6 Maths is my _______ subject. I’m terrible at it.

ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions or ask another student.
1 How long are/were your lessons at school?
2 Do/Did you work hard at school most of the time?
3 At what age will/did you take important exams?
4 How many will/did you take?
5 Will/Did you pass all of them?
I started university two years ago, when I was nineteen, and I'm doing a degree in Spanish and French. The course lasts three years, and there are three terms a year. I work in the library a lot because—like many undergraduates—I have to write lots of essays. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and had to take it again. I got the result two weeks ago: fortunately I passed this time. When I've got my degree—a BA—I want to do research for a PhD.

Circle the correct word.

1. She did an English course/term.
2. I want to do/make a degree in maths.
3. A term/degree lasts about ten weeks.
4. I've got a BA/BSc in physics.
5. I study a lot in the library/bookshop.
6. Fortunately/Unfortunately, I failed the exam.
7. You can do research before/after a degree.

Complete the dialogues.

1. How long does the term last? ~ About twelve weeks.
2. Have you got a ____________? ~ Yes, a BSc.
3. Did she have to write an essay? ~ Yes, three, in fact.
4. Can you ____________ research next year? ~ Yes, I want to do a ____________.
5. Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, he passed.
6. Can he take the exam ____________? ~ Yes, next summer.
7. How long does the course ____________? ~ It's only one term.

ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

1. How long do you need to study for a degree in chemistry? ____________________________
2. How long do you need to study for a Masters degree? ____________________________
3. How long does a university term last? ____________________________
4. How long does a school term last? ____________________________
5. If you fail exams, can you always take them again? ____________________________
## B University subjects and people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Degree subject</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 medicine</td>
<td>a doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 psychology</td>
<td>a psychologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 economics</td>
<td>an economist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 law</td>
<td>a lawyer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 politics</td>
<td>a politician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 engineering</td>
<td>an engineer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 architecture</td>
<td>an architect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 computer science</td>
<td>an IT manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 journalism</td>
<td>a journalist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 business studies</td>
<td>a businessman/woman</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Complete the sentences. Use the degree subject on the right to help you.

1. He always wanted to be a [lawyer](#).
2. She wants to be a [psychologist](#).
3. When did he become an [architect](#)?
4. She's studying to become an [engineer](#).
5. Why does he want to be a [politician](#)?
6. She works as an [economist](#).
7. Is it difficult to become a [journalist](#)?
8. I knew he'd become a [lawyer](#).

### 5 Complete the words. ‘Degree subject’ or ‘person’? Write **DS** or **P**.

1. [journalist](#) DS
2. [engineer](#) DS
3. [psychologist](#) DS
4. [ladybird](#) DS
5. [architect](#) P
6. [manager](#) P
7. [lawyer](#) P
8. [doctor](#) P
9. [politician](#) P
10. [software engineer](#) P

### 6 Test yourself. Cover the subjects and people and look at the pictures. Can you remember the subjects and people?
I can name jobs

What do you do? What's your job? I'm ...

**a police officer**

**a businessman/businesswoman**

**a secretary**

**a dentist**

**a vet**

**a builder**

**a shop assistant**

**a nurse**

**a hairdresser**

**a soldier**

**a pilot**

**a lorry driver** also **a train/bus/taxi driver**

---

**Word** | **Example** | **Meaning**
--- | --- | ---
**self-employed** | *Are you self-employed?* | working for yourself, not for a company
**unemployed** | *I'm unemployed, but I'm looking for a job.* | with no job, but wanting to work
**retired** | *My grandfather is retired now.* | = My grandfather has stopped work because he is over 65.
**housewife or househusband** | *She's a housewife now, but she was a lawyer.* | a woman or a man who looks after the house and family and doesn't go out to work
**boss** | *Who's the boss in this company?* | a person who tells people what to do in their jobs
1. Circle the correct answer.
   - The most important person in the company is the boss/hairdresser.
   - 1. A police officer/vet works with dogs and cats.
   - 2. A shop assistant/dentist sells things.
   - 3. A housewife/nurse works in a hospital.
   - 4. Retired people are usually young/old.
   - 5. An unemployed person has/hasn't got a job.
   - 6. A businesswoman/soldier can be self-employed.
   - 7. A businessman usually has a secretary/househusband.
   - 9. A lorry driver/chef works in a kitchen.
   - 10. A builder/cleaner works outdoors a lot.

2. Correct the spelling mistakes.
   - teacher
   - bisnessman
   - shop asistant
   - airdresser
   - secretairy
   - polis officer
   - retired
   - bilder
   - lory driver
   - houswife
   - self-emploied
   - solder

3. Complete the sentences.
   - Does she stay at home with the children? ~ Yes, she's a housewife.
   - Could she cut my hair? ~ Yes, she's a hairdresser.
   - Does he work for Alitalia? ~ Yes, he's a pilot.
   - Has she got a job? ~ No, she's retired.
   - Does he tell people what to do? ~ Yes, he's a boss.
   - She's seventy - has she got a job? ~ No, she's retired.
   - Does he work for other people? ~ No, he's self-employed.
   - Does she work with students? ~ Yes, she's a teacher.
   - Does he work in that restaurant? ~ Yes, he's a chef.

4. ABOUT YOU Think about your family and people you know. Write their names if they do the jobs below.
   - a nurse
   - a vet
   - a soldier
   - a secretary
   - a chef
   - a hairdresser
   - someone who is employed
   - someone who is retired
   - a teacher
   - a pilot
   - a dentist
   - a businessman or woman
   - a boss

5. Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the words. What are the jobs? Then cover the words and examples in the table and look at the meanings. Can you say the words?
A Basic information

Where does he work?
He works in ... an office a factory a hospital

Who does she work for?
She works for a car company, e.g. Toyota an airline, e.g. Cathay Pacific

What hours does he work?
He's got a full-time job, e.g. 40 hours a week a part-time job, e.g. 15 hours a week long hours, e.g. 12 hours a day from nine to five

How much does she earn?
She earns a lot. Her salary is $80,000 a year. He doesn't earn very much. He gets low wages.

Glossary

earn receive money for the work that you do
salary money you receive every month for the work that you do
wages money you receive every week for the work that you do
low If you earn low wages, you earn less than is normal.
high

1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases in the box.

- She works in ___________________.
- He works in an ___________________.
- Who do you work for? ___________________.
- How much ___________________.
- He works ___________________.
- Where does ___________________.
- She works for ___________________.
- She earns a lot. Her salary is $80,000 a year.
- She doesn't earn very much. He gets low wages.

2 Complete the text.

My sister's a nurse in our local hospital. She only works (1) ________ -time – about 15 hours (2) ________ week – and she doesn't (3) ________ much money. Nurses in our country generally get (4) ________ wages. Her husband is a doctor, and he works very long (5) ________ – sometimes 14 hours a (6) ________ . He earns about $90,000 a (7) ________ which is a very high (8) ________ in our country.

3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write answers to the questions. If you don't, ask someone who has a job.

1 What's your job?
2 Who do you work for?
3 Where do you work?
4 How many hours do you work?
B What do you have to do? 

Daniel Alessi, architect
I design buildings¹, but I also have to:
• meet² clients and discuss problems with them
• go to meetings³ with colleagues
• write reports
I spend a lot of time talking to people.

Eliane Sotano, secretary
I only work part-time now. I have to:
• make phone calls⁴
• send letters, faxes and emails
• organize meetings for my boss
• type⁵ reports
I spend a lot of time answering the phone!

Glossary
have to do something  must do something
client a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for his or her work and help
discuss something talk about something
NOT discuss about something
colleague a person who works with you
report a piece of writing giving information about work you have done
send You write a letter. then you send it to the person.
organize If you organize a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.
answer the phone pick up the phone when it rings and speak

spotlight  Spend time doing something
Spend time means to do something for a period of time:
I spend a lot of time working and travelling.
I spent a week writing the report.

4 There are mistakes in six sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.
I spent a day to meet clients. meeting
1 He makes a lot of phone calls.
2 I have a meet this afternoon.
3 She spends a lot of time type.
4 She designs offices.
5 Could you organize a meeting?
6 I wrote the report last night.
7 We discussed about our problems.
8 I answered to the phone.

5 Complete the text.
I have a really interesting new job in the office of a language school. It's a full-time job and I work from nine to five. I (1) new students when they arrive at the school, and of course, I (2) the phone and (3) letters and emails. I (4) a lot of time (5) phone calls to help students who don't speak much English. I really like my other (6) in the office - they're very friendly, and if I have any problems we can (7) them. I also (8) meetings for my boss with important (9) from other countries. Sometimes, I (10) to go to meetings with her. It's a nice place to work.
I can talk about using a computer

A The computer

1 web cam 6 monitor 11 speaker
2 pr int er 7 d isk 12 keyboard
3 la p top 8 mouse 13 mouse m at
4 h ard drive 9 h ard c opy/ pr int out
5 s creen 10 m emory st ick

Correct the spelling mistakes.

1 hard copie — hard copy
2 screen —
3 mouse —
4 personal commuter —
5 memory stick —

Complete the sentences.

1 You type information using the keyboard.
2 You listen to music using the
3 You get hard copy/printout using the printer.
4 The information in your computer is on the
5 A small computer you can carry is called a
6 You can keep a copy of information from your computer on a
7 You move the
8 You put the mouse on the
9 You read your emails on the

ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it?
2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it?
3 Have you got a laptop? If so, where do you keep it?
4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos?
5 Have you got a webcam? If so, what do you use it for?

Test yourself. Look at the picture and cover the words. Say the words.
B Word processing

You type _______ a paper copy of your letter.
You open _______ a backup copy.
You print out _______ the letter you typed in a folder.
You cut _______ your letter or report.
You click on _______ a word or sentence from your document.
You make _______ a sentence to a different place.
You move _______ a new document.
You save _______ an icon.

Complete the sentences.

Which folder did you _______ the document in?
She ________________ on the copy icon.
You can write 'Hello' at the ________________ of an email, and 'best wishes' at the ________________ .
I always ________________ a backup copy of my work.
I typed a letter to my boss and then I ________________ a printout.
My letter wasn't very interesting, so I ________________ a few sentences.
Did you ________________ your work in the correct folder?
When you ________________ a new document, you can start writing.
The beginning and the end of the letter were good, but the ________________ part was terrible.

Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember what the icons mean?
47 I can use email and the internet

A Email 📧

Have you checked your emails this morning?
Yes. Karl sent me an email with an attachment, and I have to forward it to Mark. And I got an email from Alice about her new car. I'll reply to it later.

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   - There are two messages in Lucy's inbox. ___
     1 Lucy received two junk mail messages. ___
     2 Lucy has to send an attachment to Mark. ___
     3 There's an attachment with Alice's email. ___
     4 Lucy sent Karl an email. ___
     5 Lucy hasn't deleted Alice's message. ___
     6 Lucy will reply to Walkers' email. ___
     7 Lucy got an email from Karl. ___
     8 Karl has got Mark's email address. ___

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
   - I have to ___ the junk mail. 4 Have you checked your? ____________
     1 I must reply Jean's email. ______________
     2 Did you my message? ______________
     3 I received an from Li today. ______________

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.
   1 How often do you send emails? ________________________________
   2 Who do you send them to? ________________________________
   3 What kind of junk mail do you receive? ________________________________
   4 Do people send you attachments? What's in them? ________________________________
   5 Do you always reply to emails quickly? ________________________________
### B The internet

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>ABOUT YOU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What’s your <strong>email address</strong>?</td>
<td>It's <a href="mailto:louella@yahoo.co.uk">louella@yahoo.co.uk</a></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you buy things <strong>on the internet</strong>?</td>
<td>Yes, I buy books.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What’s a <strong>web address</strong> for news in your country?</td>
<td>It's <a href="http://www.bbc.co.uk/news">www.bbc.co.uk/news</a></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which <strong>websites</strong> do you <strong>visit</strong> most?</td>
<td>eBay and MySpace.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got <strong>broadband</strong>?</td>
<td>Yes, it's very <strong>fast</strong>.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you <strong>go online</strong>?</td>
<td>I use the internet every evening.</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>visit</strong> chatrooms?</td>
<td>Yes, I often chat online.</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you <strong>download</strong> music onto your computer?</td>
<td>Yes, or I download it onto my MP3 player.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which <strong>search engines</strong> do you use?</td>
<td>I use Google and Yahoo.</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>online</th>
<th>on the internet</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 web address</td>
<td>email address</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 visit a website</td>
<td>go to a website</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 a search engine</td>
<td>a website</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 fast</td>
<td>quick</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 MP3 player</td>
<td>CD player</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 download songs</td>
<td>copy songs from the internet</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 go online</td>
<td>use the internet</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 visit a chatroom</td>
<td>chat online</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 broadband</td>
<td>download</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 data</td>
<td>computer information</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5 Complete the sentences.

- Have you got an MP3 **player**?
  1 We use different **engines**.
  2 It's not very expensive to **music from the internet**.
  3 Do you spend a lot of time **the internet**?
  4 I'd like to get **because my internet connection is very slow**.
  5 My favourite **is eBay**.
  6 You can **websites or chatrooms**.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Complete the ‘about you’ column in the table, or ask another student the questions.

### Glossary

- **on the internet** (not on internet)
- **web address** = internet address
- **broadband** With a broadband connection, you can get information from the internet very fast.
- **fast** (also **quick**) opp **slow** (150 kph for cars is **fast**; 20 kph is **slow**.)
- **online** on the internet
- **chatroom** a place on the internet where people read and reply to messages, usually about a subject. e.g. cars, music (The verb is **chat**.)
- **download** If you **download** information from the internet, you copy it to your computer. (The information is called **data**.)
- **MP3 player** a small machine you can listen to music on. e.g. an iPod
Unit 42

1 Complete the names of the school subjects.

1. m__ths
2. b__
3. h__
4. p__
5. m__
6. a__
7. g__
8. c__
9. d__ and t__
10. m__ l__

2 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

1. start __
2. take __
3. be good __
4. leave __
5. go __
6. work __
7. wear __
8. get __
9. do __

a. at PE
b. a uniform
c. secondary school

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. e
5. f
6. g
7. h
8. i
9. j

3 Complete the dialogues with one word.

1. Did he stay on at school? – No, he left at 16.
2. Did you do well in your exam? – No, I did ___
3. She passed the exam, didn’t she? – No, she it.
4. Nico didn’t go to a private school. – That’s right, he went to a __ school.
5. Are you good at chemistry? – No, I’m at it!
6. Is Riete’s daughter at primary school? – No, she’s only 4 – she’s at school.
7. Is Jao the worst at maths? – No! He’s very good at it.

Unit 43

1 Complete the text with a word in the correct form.

Last month my sister started university. She’s doing a degree in computer
(1) . The course (2) three years, and there are three ten-week
(3) in every year. She has to (4) a lot of essays and pass exams.
If she fails them, she has to take them (5) , and then wait for the results. If she
passes her final exams, she’ll get her (6) . If she does well, after that she can do
(7) to get a (8) .
2 Complete the words in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People</th>
<th>Subjects</th>
<th>Phrases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>journalist</td>
<td>medic</td>
<td>do research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undergradu</td>
<td>econom</td>
<td>do a degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engin</td>
<td>architect</td>
<td>write an essay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law</td>
<td>bus</td>
<td>studies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politic</td>
<td>polit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 44

Complete the sentences with words from the box. You can use each word more than once.

box:
- pilot
- dentist
- retired
- nurse
- businessman/businesswoman
- builder
- police officer
- unemployed
- vet
- soldier
- hairdresser
- shop assistant

You have to stand up or walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer, a hairdresser, a soldier, a builder, or a shop assistant.

1. You probably have to go to university to be ____________________________.
2. You need to be good with your hands to be ____________________________.
3. You need to be good at maths or with numbers to be ____________________________.
4. You probably have a lot of free time if you are ____________________________.
5. You usually have to wear a uniform if you are ____________________________.
6. You work in an office most of the time if you are ____________________________.

Unit 45

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

- write _______ a the phone
- send _______ b reports
- make _______ c problems
- answer _______ d clients
- organize _______ e buildings
- discuss _______ f long hours
- work for _______ g meetings
- design _______ h phone calls
- meet _______ i a computer company
- work _______ j emails

Practise your pronunciation using the CD-ROM.
Complete the conversation.

What's your job? ~ I work an office.

Do you work long hours? ~ No, it's part-

How many hours is that? ~ Three hours a day.

And what do you have to do? ~ I a lot of time sending emails.

Do you get a good salary? ~ No, I don't very much.

What about the people you work with? ~ Oh, my are very nice.

Unit 46

1 Complete the words and phrases.

Do you need hard copy?

1 Did you bring your laptop?

2 It's a nice key.

3 I need a new mouse.

4 What's a memory?

5 Did you make a backup copy?

6 The information is on the hard drive.

7 Can you do a print, please?

8 Have you got a webcam?

2 Complete the crossword. What is the word in the grey squares?

The word in the grey squares is _____________.

124 REVIEW: STUDY AND WORK
Unit 47

1 Find eight more words or phrases in the circle.
   | MP3 player |  |
   |  |  |
   |  |  |
   |  |  |

2 Complete the crossword.

   - I must _____________ to her email.
   - Send it as an _____________ .
   - Did you get my _____________ ?
   - Do you often go _____________ ?
   - I always _____________ junk mail.
   - My computer is very _____________ .
   - How many emails do you _____________ ?
   - Have you got _____________ ?
   - I spend hours on the _____________ .
   - Did you _____________ my email?
   - He doesn't _____________ email very much.
   - Do you often _____________ chatrooms?

Look at the vocabulary building tables on pages 199 to 201.
48 I can say what I like

A Love it or hate it?

1 I love football.
2 I really like it.
3 I like it.
4 I quite like it.
5 I think it's OK.
6 I don't like it very much.
7 I don't like it.
8 I hate football.

spotlight like/love/hate + -ing

After like, love, and hate, use a noun, a pronoun, or -ing form.

I like/love/hate football.
I like/love/hate playing football.
I like/love/hate learning English.

1 Who likes it more? A or B?

- A quite likes coffee. B really likes coffee.

1 A doesn't like studying. B thinks studying is OK.
2 A likes chocolate. B loves chocolate.
3 A really likes sport. B thinks it's OK.
4 A doesn't like shopping very much. B doesn't like shopping.
5 A hates pop music. B doesn't like pop music very much.
6 A really likes tea. B quite likes tea.

2 Correct the mistakes.

- Do you like watching tennis?
- I hate it chocolate.
- They don't like to doing homework very much.
- He doesn't like very much speaking English.
- I like quite shopping.
- She doesn't like drive.
- I think tennis OK.
- I like really going out with friends.
- She loves watch sport.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student your answers.

1 I ____________ watching TV.
2 I ____________ studying English.
3 I ____________ driving.
4 I ____________ shopping for clothes.
5 I ____________ cleaning the house.
6 I ____________ writing emails.
7 I ____________ talking on the phone.
8 I ____________ going to the cinema.
It's my favourite thing

I work for a TV company. It's a wonderful job - I love it.

I'm learning to play the guitar. It's good fun and my teacher's fantastic.

My favourite sport is tennis, but I also enjoy playing football.

I don't watch TV - it's very boring, but I'm interested in old films from the 1960s. I prefer old films to modern ones, in fact.

I'm very keen on jazz; I go to a club every Friday.

Glossary

- **wonderful/fantastic**: very good
- **fun**: If something is fun it makes you happy.
- **favourite**: Your favourite thing or person is the one you like most.
- **enjoy doing something**: If you enjoy doing something, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. (The adjective is enjoyable.)
- **boring**: opp. interesting
- **prefer ... to ...**: like someone or something more than another person or thing
- **be keen on something**: like or be interested in something

**spotlight** interesting/interested

I think modern art is interesting means 'I'm interested in modern art.' NOT I'm interesting in modern art.

Write eight more sentences using words from columns 1, 2, and 3.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>not interested</td>
<td>boss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I'm</td>
<td>the party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>My</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>She</td>
<td>fantastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>He's a</td>
<td>wonderful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Was</td>
<td>keen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>It's</td>
<td>prefers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Are</td>
<td>a boring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It's a wonderful city.

It's not interested

I'm at the party

My enjoy

She fantastic

He's a wonderful

Was keen

It's prefers

Are a boring

Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

- **interesting** fun interested keen enjoy favourite prefer enjoyable

1. Is learning English good interesting?
2. Do you prefer meat to fish?
3. What's your favourite city?
4. Are you keen on sport?
5. Are you interested in classical music?
6. Do you enjoy walking in the countryside?
7. Do you think history is enjoyable?

ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 5, or ask another student.
I can talk about sport

A Games

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>game</th>
<th>place</th>
<th>equipment</th>
<th>score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>football</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>goal, ball</td>
<td>1 – 0 one nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 – 1 two one or two goals to one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rugby</td>
<td>pitch</td>
<td>rugby ball</td>
<td>10 – 6 ten six or ten points to six</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice hockey</td>
<td>rink</td>
<td>goal, stick, puck</td>
<td>3–2 three two or three goals to two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volleyball</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>net</td>
<td>15–10 fifteen points to ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>net, racket</td>
<td>6 – 3 six three or six games to three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6 – 2 is one set in tennis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>basket</td>
<td>60 – 44 sixty points to forty-four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Combine words to find games, places, equipment and scores.

- volley ✓ pitch tennis ice ✓ volleyball
- football ball ✓ basket nil racket three hockey ball

2 True or false? Write T or F. Change the false sentences and make them true.

- You score goals in basketball. F You score points in basketball.
- 1 Sticks and rackets are equipment. ✓
- 2 You have a net in tennis and volleyball. ✓
- 3 You score points in ice hockey. ✓
- 4 You play football on a court. ✓
- 5 You play ice hockey with rackets. ✓
- 6 You play volleyball on a court. ✓
- 7 You score points in rugby. ✓
- 8 You play rugby with a puck. ✓

3 Complete the sentences.

- I need to get a new tennis racket.
- 1 I watched a fantastic ________________ of ice hockey on TV last night.
- 2 People who play ________________ are usually very tall.
- 3 It was six ________________ to four to Federer in the second _________________.
- 4 What was the football ________________? ~ It was three ________________, (3–0).
- 5 The football ________________ is next to the tennis ________________.
Correct the bold words.

1. Shevchenko did two goals. scored
2. Lazio have a play next Saturday. play
3. Inter are playing with Parma. play against
4. AC Milan are number one of the table. number one
5. Treviso lost 3 – 1 with Fiorentina. drawn
6. Parma beat Sampdoria. beat
7. Milan win their game last week. win
8. Palermo draw with AS Roma. draw
9. Lazio won Livorno 3 – 1. win

Complete the sentences.

1. They scored in the second half.
2. It’s an important game against Valencia.
3. Seville beat 1 – 2 to Barcelona.
5. It was 0 – 0 at half-time.
7. Ronaldinho scored the goal.
8. We drew our last match 4 – 1.
9. They were 1 – 0 at half-time.
10. What was the final score?

About you and your country

Look at the football scores in a newspaper this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

Bayern Munich beat Borussia Dortmund 1 – 0. Ballack scored in the 34th minute.
50 I can talk about my free time

A Common activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I go...</th>
<th>I play...</th>
<th>I do some...</th>
<th>I collect things (e.g. stamps).</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>camping</td>
<td>cards</td>
<td>travelling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>table tennis</td>
<td>flower arranging</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishing</td>
<td>computer games</td>
<td>cooking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the cinema</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the gym</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to the cinema</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What do you do in your free time?

Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?

1. Can you do these things inside your home? Or do you have to do them in another place?
   - watch TV inside
   - go to the gym another place
   - do fishing
   - do a lot of cooking
   - do flower arranging

2. Complete the sentences with go, play, do, collect, or spend.
   - I never play cards.
   - Do you often go to the cinema?
   - My brother collects old clocks.
   - I'd like to play the guitar.
   - She do a lot of cooking.

3. ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Write 'yes' by the ones you do now. Tick (✓) the ones you would like to do. Put a cross (✗) by the ones you aren’t interested in.

4. Test yourself. Cover the words and say the names of the activities.
**Favourite hobbies in Russia**

Russian people have many hobbies. Older people enjoy gardening, fishing, and repairing cars. For younger people, there are various clubs in school where children can learn many activities. Popular hobbies include sport, playing musical instruments, computers, listening to music, cooking, and collecting different things.

**Alexandra:** "I like listening to rock and classical music. I also like playing football with my friends. But my favourite hobby is shooting (you can see me in the photo), and I'm quite good at it."

**Veronica:** "I have many hobbies: cooking, reading, drawing, and singing in the shower. My favourite is drawing. It's wonderful to see pictures appearing on paper."

**Dima:** "I play the guitar, and I can sing Russian and English songs. I'm good at swimming, snowboarding and skiing. I also like travelling very much."

**True or false? Correct the false sentences.**

1. Alexandra doesn't like rock music. **False. She likes rock music.**
2. Older people enjoy gardening. **True.**
3. Playing a musical instrument isn't popular in Russia. **False.**
4. Dima plays the piano. **False. He plays the guitar.**
5. Veronica's favourite hobby is reading. **False. Her favourite hobby is drawing.**
6. Veronica has various hobbies. **False. She has many hobbies.**
7. Veronica's quite good at shooting. **False. She isn't good at shooting.**
8. Veronica dances in the shower. **False. She doesn't dance in the shower.**
9. Younger people like repairing cars. **False. Younger people don't like repairing cars.**

**ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY** Write your answers or ask another student.

1. What's your favourite hobby? __________
2. What hobbies are popular with older people? __________
3. What hobbies are popular with younger people? __________
4. What classical music do you listen to? __________
5. Can you play a musical instrument? If so, what? __________
6. Are you a good singer? __________
A Pop and rock 🎵

Arctic Monkeys are a four-piece band from Sheffield, England. They first became well known in 2004 when people were able to download their music from the internet. Their first two singles went to number 1 in the UK singles chart in 2005, and their first album, 'Whatever People Say I Am, That's What I'm Not', sold over 350,000 copies in its first week.

The group are: Alex Turner, who is the lead singer and plays the guitar; Jamie Cook and Nick O'Malley, who both play the guitar; and Matthew Helders, who is the drummer and also sings.

What can you remember? Circle the correct answer.

1. There are five people in the band.
   - They first became well known in 2004/2005.
   - People were able/unable to download music in 2004.
   - Their first two/three singles went to number 1.
   - Their first single/album sold over 350,000 copies in the first week.
   - Alex Turner/Jamie Cook is the lead singer.
   - Matthew Helder plays the guitar/drums.

Complete the sentences.

1. Paul McCartney plays the _____________.
   - Another word for a band is a _____________.
   - The most important singer is the _____________.
   - Someone who plays the drums is the _____________.
   - A CD with one song on it is a _____________.
   - A CD with about ten songs on it is an _____________.
   - The _____________ is the list of singles that sell the most in a week.
   - The Beatles first became well _____________ in the 1960s.
   - You can _____________ music from the internet.

ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1. Who's your favourite group?
2. Who's in the band, and what instruments do they play?
3. When did they first become well known?
4. What's the name of one of their singles?
5. What's the name of one of their albums?
6. What's your favourite song by this band?
A concert of classical music.

Pianist Sviatoslav Richter, playing one of Beethoven's piano sonatas.

Opera singer Cecilia Bartoli, performing in Cosi Fan Tutte.

Cellist Yo Yo Ma, playing the cello concerto by the English composer, Edward Elgar.

Vanessa Mae, violinist, playing a violin concerto by Mozart.

Sir Simon Rattle, conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic Orchestra.

We say a book by (Tolstoy), a song by (Robbie Williams), a symphony by (Mozart), a painting by (Picasso), a film by (Martin Scorsese), etc.

Correct the spelling mistakes.

1. violinista violinist
2. orchestre orchestra

Complete the sentences.

1. Music by Bach, Brahms or Mozart is classical music.
2. A large group of people who play classical music together is called an orchestra.
3. The person who stands in front of them is the conductor.
4. A person who plays the piano is a pianist.
5. A person who plays the violin is a violinist.
6. A person who plays the cello is a cellist.
7. A person who sings opera is an opera singer.
8. ‘Carmen’ is an opera by Bizet.
9. Last night we went to a classical music concert. Placido Domingo was with the London Symphony Orchestra. It was fantastic.

Cover the texts and look at the pictures. What can you see in each one?
52 I can talk about films

A Describing films

A thriller is often exciting.
A comedy is funny.
A war film is often violent.
A love story is romantic.
A action film is exciting.
A horror film is frightening.
A cartoon is often funny.

1 Make kinds of film from the letters.
   - rwa milf  war  film
   - rilerht
   - moycd
   - tanico ifml

2 Match 1-5 with a-f.
   - an exciting  d  a war film
   - a romantic  b comedy
   - a frightening  c love story
   - a violent  d action film
   - a funny  e thriller
   - an exciting  f horror film

3 Write one adjective to describe each picture.

4 Test yourself. Cover the words and name the different kinds of film in the pictures at the top of the page.
B What’s on?

Mercedes (M) and Enrique (E) are talking.

M What’s on at the cinema?
E There’s a film on called Rumor Has It.
M Mmm. What kind of movie is it?
E It’s a romantic comedy. It’s about a woman and her relationship with her boyfriend and family. It’s had good reviews.
M OK. Who’s in it?
E Er, it stars Kevin Costner and Jennifer Aniston.
M Oh, I like Kevin Costner – he’s a good actor. Who’s the director?
E Rob Reiner. He made When Harry Met Sally.
M Right. And where’s it on?
E The Odeon.
M OK. Let’s go and see it.

Glossary

What’s on? = ‘What film can we see?’
cinema a place where you see films
movie a film
It’s about ... = The subject is ...
review an opinion of a film in a newspaper or on the radio, TV or internet
star be one of the main actors in a film
(actor) (The person is a star.)
actor e.g. Kevin Costner or Jennifer Aniston
(female actor can also be called an actress.)
director person who makes a film, e.g. Steven Spielberg
Where’s it on? = ‘Where can we see it?’
see a film at the cinema (not watch a film at the cinema)

5 Complete the conversation.

A What’s on ______ at the cinema?
B A film called The Constant Gardener.
A Oh, what (1) __________________ of film is it?
B It’s a thriller.
A What’s it (2) __________________ ?
B I’m not sure, but it’s had good (3) __________________ .
A Oh, and who’s (4) __________ it?
B It (5) ____________ Ralph Fiennes and Rachel Weiss.
A They’re both good (6) ____________ . Who’s the (7) ____________ ?
B A Brazilian called Fernando Meirelles.
A OK. And where’s it (8) ____________ ?
B At the ABC cinema.
A Let’s go and (9) ____________ it.
B Fine.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

1 What kind of films do you like? ______________________________________________________
2 What was the last film you saw? _____________________________________________________
3 Where was it on? _________________________________________________________________
4 Who are the stars of the film? _____________________________________________________
5 Who’s the director? _______________________________________________________________
6 What’s it about? ________________________________________________________________
A What is the media?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>media</td>
<td>The media often write about famous people.</td>
<td>TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magazine</td>
<td>Do you read women's magazines?</td>
<td>Something you can buy every week or month, often with stories and coloured photos e.g. <em>Time</em>, <em>Hola</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinion</td>
<td>What's your opinion of the events?</td>
<td>what you think about something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>Journalists report the news from all over the world.</td>
<td>give information on the news; the person is a reporter (= journalist)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>event</td>
<td>The Olympic Games is a very big event.</td>
<td>something important that happens. It can be good or bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>Fortunately, nobody died in the accident.</td>
<td>stop living</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>war</td>
<td>The two countries were at war for ten years.</td>
<td>If a country is at war, it is fighting with another country; when a war ends, there is peace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disaster</td>
<td>The tsunami was a terrible disaster.</td>
<td>something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>celebrities</td>
<td>There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.</td>
<td>famous person, usually from TV, film or sport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.</td>
<td>text, picture or short film which tries to sell you something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Sentence 1</th>
<th>Sentence 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>What do the media say about him?</td>
<td>What does the advert say about him?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>There is peace between the two countries.</td>
<td>There is war between the two countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>What's your opinion of the news?</td>
<td>What do you think of the news?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>It was a great event.</td>
<td>It was a great advertisement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>He is reporting from Seoul.</td>
<td>He is giving the news from Seoul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I read it in an article.</td>
<td>I read it in an advertisement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>She's a TV celebrity.</td>
<td>She's on TV a lot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Where did he live?</td>
<td>Where did he die?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The media is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) ________, and the internet. The media (2) ________ on important (3) ________ from around the world; for example, 
(4) ________ like the Asian tsunami, or (5) ________ between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) ________ of events round the world. And reporters also like to write about (7) ________ such as Tom Cruise and Angelina Jolie.

3 Cover the words and examples and look at the meanings. Say the words.
**Overview**

**B Your media**

**Media questionnaire**

1. Why do you read a newspaper?
   - a) to find out what has happened
   - b) because it has interesting articles
   - c) for the sports results
   - d) for the business news

2. What do you watch on TV?
   - a) the news
   - b) soaps
   - c) films
   - d) nothing much

3. What do you listen to on the radio?
   - a) the news
   - b) music programmes
   - c) the weather forecast
   - d) nothing much

4. Do you believe what you read or hear in the news?
   - a) yes, all of it
   - b) yes, most of it
   - c) yes, some of it
   - d) no, none of it

**Glossary**

- **newspaper** e.g. *The Times, The Herald Tribune, Le Monde* (also paper)
- **find out** get information or facts
- **happen** take place, e.g. 'We don't know what will happen tomorrow.'
- **article** a piece of writing in a paper or magazine
- **on TV/on the radio** not in TV/in the radio, but in the paper
- **soap** a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world
- **nothing much** nothing important
- **programme** a TV or radio show, e.g. the news
- **weather forecast** a description of the weather for the next few days
- **believe** think that something is true
  - all = 100%, most = 80-95%, some = 30-50%, none = 0%

**Spotlight**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>watch, see, listen, hear</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We watch TV, but we see or watch a programme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We listen to the radio, but we hear or listen to a programme.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Circle the correct answer.**

- 1 Read an article on/in the paper.
- 2 Let's listen to the/a news.
- 3 Watch a programme in/on TV.
- 4 Find out what has happened.

**5 Complete the dialogues.**

- I always ________ a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read _______ of it?
  1 Did you ________ TV last night? ~ Yes, I ________ a programme about dogs.
  2 I read the story but I don't ________ it's true. ~ No, ________ of it is true. It's all false.
  3 Have you heard the ________? ~ No, what's ________?
  4 Did you ________ to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I ________ the 8 o'clock news.
  5 What's in the ________ this morning? ~ I don't know; I never buy one.
  6 Have you seen the weather ________? ~ Yes, it's going to rain.
  7 What did you ________ on TV? ~ Oh, nothing ________.

**6 ABOUT YOU** Read the questionnaire again. Tick (√) your answers, or write a different answer. Ask another student the questions.
Review: Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 Write the phrases in the correct column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I really like it.</td>
<td>I think it’s quite boring.</td>
<td>It’s my favourite thing.</td>
<td>I think it’s fantastic.</td>
<td>I’m not very interested in it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I love it.</td>
<td>I quite enjoy it.</td>
<td>I’m not very keen on it.</td>
<td>It’s quite enjoyable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think it’s OK.</td>
<td>I don’t like it very much.</td>
<td>It’s wonderful.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I really hate it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Circle the correct word.

- Who does your favourite actor?
  1. My mother isn’t interested/interesting in tennis.
  2. Our teacher is very keen in/on classical music.
  3. Do you enjoy drive/driving?

- We prefer swimming to/that running.
  4. I think that film’s very bored/boring.
  5. Sue quite likes/likes quite studying English.

Unit 49

1 Look at the games in the box. Write the answers below.

| football | rugby | ice hockey | volleyball | tennis | basketball |

1. These games use a round ball:
   - football, ______________
2. Players use their hands more than their feet in these games:
   - ______________
3. These games have more than four players when they are playing:
   - ______________
4. This game uses: a) rackets ______________ b) sticks ______________

2 Read Chelsea’s results for last year, and complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chelsea</th>
<th>played</th>
<th>won</th>
<th>drawn</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>goals for</th>
<th>goals against</th>
<th>points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>38</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chelsea played 38 games. They won 29, they (2) ___________ four, and they (3) ___________ five. They (4) ___________ 72, (5) ___________ , and finished the season (6) ___________ of the league with 91 points.
Unit 50

1 Complete the dialogues.

Does he like ___________? ~ Yes, he’s always in the garden.
1 What’s your _______ hobby? ~ I love camping. I ___________ every year.
2 Does she like cooking? ~ Yes, she ___________ a lot of cooking.
3 Does he have a hobby? ~ Yes, he ___________ old cars and bikes.
4 Do you play a musical ___________? ~ No, I don’t.
5 Do you listen to ___________ music? ~ Yes, I do. I really like Mozart.
6 Do you ___________ a lot of travelling? ~ No. I prefer to ___________ time with friends.

2 Complete answer ‘d’ in each question. Then choose the answers that are true for you or your country.

1 I enjoy ...
   a playing cards  b singing  c collecting things  d ___________ time with friends
2 My favourite activity of these is ...
   a travelling  b camping  c reading  d ___________ to the gym
3 I’m quite good at ...
   a swimming  b cooking  c drawing  d computer ___________
4 I would like to ...
   a paint well  b play the guitar  c sing well  d ___________ the piano
5 ... is popular in my country.
   a Table tennis  b Skiing  c Fishing  d Flower ___________

Unit 51

1 Put the words from the circle into two groups. Give each group a title.

2 Write a different name to complete each sentence.

1 ___________________________ is a famous opera singer in my country.
2 ___________________________ is lead singer with ___________________________.
3 ___________________________ is a famous conductor.
4 The ___________________________ orchestra comes from my country.
5 ___________________________ is a great pianist.
6 ___________________________ by ___________________________ is one of my favourite albums.
7 ___________________________ is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
8 ___________________________ is the drummer with ___________________________.
Unit 52

1 Complete the sentences.
1 It's an action film and it's very exciting.
2 It's a w. film and it's very v.:
3 It's a h. film and it's quite f.:
4 It's a t. and it's very e.:
5 It's a l. story and it's very r.:

2 Complete the conversation.
A There's a good film at the Odeon cinema. It's called Brokeback Mountain.
B I've never heard of it. What's it (1) ?
A A relationship, a love relationship, between two cowboys.
B Oh. Who's (2) it?
A It (3) Jake Gyllenhaal and Heath Ledger.
B Oh, I like Jake Gyllenhaal. He's a very good (4) ...
A Yeah, and it's had great (5) in all the papers. The (6) is Ang Lee.
   He made Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon. Would you like to go and (7) it?

Unit 53

1 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it, and where does it go?
I usually buy a newspaper every day to find what has happened, but yesterday I listened the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it TV. As usual most it was bad news: more than twenty people in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting about a television news who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.

2 Match 1 – 6 with a – f.
1 an opinion
2 a news report
3 an event
4 an advertisement
5 the media
6 celebrities

140 REVIEW: HOBBIES AND INTERESTS
I can arrange a holiday

**Glossary**

- **arrange something** plan and organize something
- **go abroad** go to another country
- **on holiday** If you are on holiday, you are not at work and you are away from home.
- **book** arrange the plane ticket, e.g. buy it before you travel
- **flight** a journey by plane
- **accommodation** a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
- **find** look and see where something is
- **passport**
- **visa** a document or note in your passport which means you can travel to certain countries
- **travel insurance** You pay a company for travel insurance so they will help you if you lose something or are ill on holiday
- **foreign** of another country
- **currency** the money of a country, e.g. $ (dollars) or € (euros)
- **pack** put clothes in a suitcase
- **suitcase**
- **hire** pay to use something for a short time, e.g. a car, a bike

**Spotlight: might + verb**

*Might* means 'it is possible that' or 'perhaps'. *Might* is the same in all forms.

- You *might* be ill on holiday.
- He *might* forget his passport.
- *It might* be cold in March.

**1 Circle the correct word.**

I have to find/ret find a visa.
1. We went abroad/holiday last summer.
2. I had to hire/arrange accommodation.
3. We might/have go to Japan in June.
4. I need to hire/get travel insurance.
5. Can we pack/hire a car here?
6. I must hire/find my passport.
7. Have you made/packed your suitcase?
8. Did you book/have the flight to Paris?

**2 Complete the text.**

I'm going on **holiday** for two weeks this Saturday. I wanted to go (1) __________ this year, perhaps to the Far East, and I finally decided to go to China. I booked the (2) __________ with China Airlines. I needed (3) __________ too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in Beijing. I found a nice one and (4) __________ to stay there for the first week. I also had to (5) __________ a visa, and I got some foreign (6) __________ — Chinese Yuan. I paid €30 for travel (7) __________; you never know, I (8) __________ be ill or lose my things. Tomorrow, I'm going to (9) __________ my suitcase. I know I put my passport somewhere, but where? I'll have to (10) __________ it before Saturday!

**3 Test yourself.** Cover the list of things you might do before you go abroad. Can you remember the phrases and write your own list?
I can book a hotel room

A Describing a hotel

travelog.com

Atlanta Hotel (Vilnius, Lithuania)

We stayed in this hotel near the Old Town where we had a beautiful bedroom with good facilities: minibar, internet access, satellite TV and air conditioning. The hotel has a great gym. There was 24-hour room service and the staff were very helpful with tourist information. The café bar was a very pleasant place to meet other guests, and we had a delicious breakfast there too. We recommend both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short stay.

1 Circle the right answer.
   ➤ The bar was pleasant/delicious.
   1 The staff/guests work in the hotel.
   2 It was a lovely hotel so I recommended/didn’t recommend it to my sister.
   3 The dinner was delicious/helpful.
   4 A lot of tourists/guests visit our city.
   5 Internet access and satellite TV are room service/facilities.
   6 You can get drinks from the gym/minibar.

2 Complete the questions.

   ➤ What was the last hotel you stayed in? ___________?
   1 How long did you ___________ there?
   2 Were the ___________ helpful?
   3 Did the room have good ___________ e.g. internet access?
   4 Did it have a ___________ with drinks in your room?
   5 Did it have ___________ TV?
   6 Did it have air ___________ and central ___________?
   7 Did you talk to other ___________ in the hotel?
   8 Would you ___________ this hotel to other people?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 2, or ask another student.

Glossary

stay in a hotel live for a short time in a hotel (also a stay)
facilities things you can use, e.g. internet, gym
air conditioning makes a room colder, central heating makes a room warmer
room service when a waiter brings food or drinks to your room
staff people who work for a company
helpful wanting to help
tourist someone who goes to a place on holiday
guest a person staying in a hotel or your home
delicious very good to eat
recommend say something is good
Katja (K) is talking to the receptionist (R) at a hotel.

R Hotel Metropole. Can I help you?
K Oh, good morning. I’d like to book a double room with a bathroom for May 24th, please.
R That’s fine. All our bedrooms are en suite.
K Right, and how much is that?
R It’s €60 a night, and breakfast is included in the price.
K That’s great. And has the hotel got parking?
R No, I’m afraid not.
K Oh, what a shame. OK, well, never mind. I’ll take it.
R Right, can I have your credit card details please?...

**Glossary**

book a room  ask a hotel to keep a room for you for a future date

en suite  a bedroom with a bathroom

right OK

€60 a night = €60 for one night

included If breakfast is included, you don’t pay any more for it.

(that’s) great fine; very good

parking a place to leave a car

I’m afraid not = I’m sorry, but no.

never mind = it isn’t important

details information, e.g. the card number

**spotlight** That’s a shame/ What a shame

You say this when someone tells you something which is a little sad, or you don’t want to hear.

I can’t come this evening.

~ Oh, what a shame.

~ Oh, that’s a shame.

**4 Answer the questions about the dialogue.**

1. Is Katja staying for two nights?  No
2. Does she want a room for one person?  
3. Has the room got a bathroom?  
4. Is she happy about the price?  
5. Will she pay more for breakfast?  
6. How much is the room for one night?  
7. Can she leave her car at the hotel?  
8. Do they want her credit card details?  

**5 Complete the dialogue.**

A Regent Hotel, can I help you?
B Oh, hello, I’d like to book a room for two next Tuesday, please.
A Is that a single room or a twin room?
B A double, please.
A All our rooms are en suite, with bath or shower.
B That’s right. How much is the room?
A It’s €45 for one night, and breakfast is included.
B OK, and does the room have air conditioning?
A I’m afraid not.
B That’s a shame. Oh, well, never mind. I’ll take the room.
A Could you give me your credit card details, please?
I can communicate in an airport

A Check-in

When passengers get to the airport, they put their luggage (suitcase and bag) on a trolley and go to the check-in desk. There, they show their ticket and passport, and put their luggage on the scales. They can take hand luggage on the plane with them. The person at the check-in desk often asks, 'Do you want a window seat or an aisle seat?' They give the passenger a boarding card, and they often say, 'Have a good flight.'

1. Complete the words.
   - passenger
   - department
   - have a good flight
   - have a good time
   - hand luggage

2. Test yourself. Cover the text. Name the things in the picture.

B Departures

Departures from Bristol Airport

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flight</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Departure time</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EZY 6025</td>
<td>Barcelona</td>
<td>10.25</td>
<td>departed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KL 1048</td>
<td>Amsterdam</td>
<td>10.35</td>
<td>flight closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA 4021</td>
<td>Munich</td>
<td>10.50</td>
<td>last call gate 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR 483</td>
<td>Dublin</td>
<td>11.00</td>
<td>boarding gate 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA 7643</td>
<td>Milan</td>
<td>11.05</td>
<td>delayed until 11.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA 4084</td>
<td>Paris CDG</td>
<td>11.35</td>
<td>check-in desk 22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary

departed: If a plane has departed, it has left the airport. (The noun is departure.)
flight closed: You can’t get on the plane now.
last call: You must get on the plane now.
gate: The place where you leave the airport building to get on the plane.
boarding: If the flight is boarding, people are getting on the plane.
delayed: If a plane is delayed, it is going to be late. (It isn’t on time.)
4 Complete the airport announcements.
   ▶ Flight __________. KL 1048 to Amsterdam is now closed.
   1 This is the last __________ for passengers on flight BA4021 to Munich. Please go to __________ immediately.
   2 Passengers on flight FR 483 to Dublin: this flight is now __________ at gate 7.
   3 We are very sorry that flight BA 7643 to Milan is __________.
   4 Would passengers on flight BA 4084 to Paris please go to __________ desk 22.
   5 Flight BA 7643 to Milan will now __________ at 11.50.

C Take-off and landing

You get on the plane and fasten your seat belt.

The plane takes off.

The plane lands and you get off.

You go through passport control. Someone checks your passport.

You collect your luggage from baggage reclaim.

You go through customs and leave the terminal.

5 Put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.
   a collect your luggage  
   b go through customs  
   c fasten your seat belt  
   d the plane lands  
   e get off the plane  
   f leave the terminal  
   g get on the plane  

6 Complete the phrases.
   ▶ You leave __________.
   1 The plane takes off and __________.
   2 You fasten __________.
   3 You go through __________ and __________.
   4 You collect your __________ from __________.
   5 Passengers __________ and __________ __________ the plane.

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.
   1 How often do you travel by plane? __________.
   2 What do you do in the airport when your flight is delayed? __________.
   3 Do you like to sit in a window seat or an aisle seat? __________.
   4 What hand luggage do you usually take on the plane? __________.

8 Test yourself. Cover the words. Can you remember the phrases for each picture?
We spent ten days in Hyères, a holiday resort in the south of France. We flew to Nice, then got a bus to Hyères. We rented an apartment near the beach, and that’s where we spent most mornings. I was happy to lie on the beach and sunbathe in my new swimming costume; my husband preferred a T-shirt and long shorts. He went swimming a lot—the sea was lovely and warm. We had lunch in the apartment, then relaxed for an hour or so. In the late afternoon we usually went for a walk, and in the evening, had dinner in one of the restaurants near the beach. It was a perfect holiday.

1. Write the words for the meanings.
   - A place where people go for a holiday. **resort**
   1. Pay money to use a house for a period of time. **rent**
   2. Women often wear one on the beach. **swimming costume**
   3. Men often wear these on the beach. **shorts**
   4. Rooms you rent for a holiday. **apartment**
   5. You can swim in this, and it’s not a pool. **sea**
   6. Very good; cannot be better. **perfect**
   7. Do nothing and enjoy yourself. **relax**
   8. Lie in the sun in a swimming costume or shorts.

2. Complete the sentences.
   - I went for a swim in the **sea** and looked at the sea.
   1. We sat on the ___________ and looked at the sea.
   2. We ______________ a bus to the mountains, and then ______________ for a walk.
   3. We ______________ an apartment in a small holiday ______________ near Malaga.
   4. It takes an hour or ______________ to get to the beach.
   5. We spent two days near Paris, then ______________ from Charles de Gaulle Airport to New York.
   6. I want to relax, so I’m just going to ______________ on the beach and sunbathe.

3. Test yourself. Cover the text and name 1–4 in the picture.
I can describe a sightseeing holiday

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>map</td>
<td>You can get a map in Tourist Information.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guide</td>
<td>Our guide was very good.</td>
<td>A person (guide) or book (guidebook) which describes a place for tourists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidebook</td>
<td>A guidebook is useful.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>typical</td>
<td>Look – a typical tourist, with a guidebook and camera.</td>
<td>A typical thing is a good example of its kind.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go sightseeing</td>
<td>We went sightseeing yesterday.</td>
<td>go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art gallery</td>
<td>I’m going to an art gallery this afternoon.</td>
<td>a place where people can look at paintings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit museums</td>
<td>You should visit the British Museum in London.</td>
<td>visit go and see a place for a short time museum a place where you look at old or interesting things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or art galleries etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look round</td>
<td>I want to look round the town.</td>
<td>walk round a place to see it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go on a (guided) tour</td>
<td>We went on a tour of the old town.</td>
<td>a short visit to a town, museum, etc. sometimes with a guide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get lost</td>
<td>I got lost so I asked for help.</td>
<td>If you get lost or are lost, you don’t know where you are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take photos</td>
<td>I took lots of photos.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the correct word.

- art museum/gallery
- guide map/book
- go sightseeing
- guide/guided tour
- make/take photos
- go on/make a tour
- visit/go a museum

2 Complete the sentences.

- We went on a guided ________ tour.
  1 She __________ a lot of photos of some __________ old French villages.
  2 You __________ go and look __________ the museums – they’re very interesting.
  3 I __________ lost because I didn’t have a __________.
  4 We went to the __________ gallery to see those Picasso paintings.
  5 We __________ on a tour of the centre and the __________ was interesting and funny.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers or ask another student.

When you visit new towns/cities, do you:

1 go sightseeing? __________
2 take a map with you? __________
3 buy a guidebook? __________
4 take photos? __________
5 visit museums and art galleries? __________
6 look round the shops? __________
7 often get lost? __________
8 go on a guided tour? __________
### A At the bank

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Answers</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Can I use this card in this cash machine?</td>
<td>It’s a Visa card, yes.</td>
<td>also ATM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where can I change dollars into euros?</td>
<td>In a bank, a hotel, or a bureau de change.</td>
<td>change (money) e.g. give someone dollars and get the same in euros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is there a bureau de change near here?</td>
<td>Yes, there’s one at the station.</td>
<td>an office where you can change money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which currency do I need for Argentina?</td>
<td>You need pesos.</td>
<td>the money that a country uses, e.g. dollars in the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ve got Japanese yen. What’s the exchange rate for the euro?</td>
<td>It’s 142 yen to the euro.</td>
<td>exchange rate how much money from one country you can buy with money from another country, e.g. US$10 = €12.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do I sign this?</td>
<td>Just here.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What commission do you charge?</td>
<td>We charge 1%. (%) = per cent</td>
<td>commission the money you pay a bank, e.g. for changing currency charge ask someone to pay a certain price for something</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Match 1 – 5 with a – f to make questions.

   - Where can I change my euros __________ a) for Brazil?
   - 1 What currency do I need ________ b) for the peso?
   - 2 What commission ________ c) do you charge?
   - 3 Can I use this card ________ d) in this cash machine?
   - 4 What’s the exchange rate ________ e) in the station?
   - 5 Is there a bureau de change ________ f) into dollars? ✓

2. Complete the sentences.

   - The banks charge 1.5% commission. 4 What’s the exchange ________ ?
   - 1 ____________ the cheque at the bottom. 5 You pay one ________ cent to the bank.
   - 2 ____________ dollars into euros. 6 You get money from a ____________ machine.
   - 3 The ____________ in China is the yuan.

3. ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers or ask another student.

   1 What’s the currency in your country? ____________________________
   2 Do you know the exchange rate for the US dollar? ____________________________
   3 When you travel, where do you get or change money? ____________________________
   4 Do you use a cash machine to get your own currency? ____________________________
   5 Where do you find cash machines in your country? ____________________________
B At the post office

1 You want to send a letter to a friend.

- You write the name, address and postcode on the envelope.
- You put a stamp on it.
- You post it in the letter box or postbox.
- The postman or postwoman delivers it in the next day or two.

2 You want to send a parcel to Germany.

- You take it to the post office.
- 'How much is this parcel to Germany, please?'
- 'Put it on the scales. Please. 350 gms – that’s £3.43.'
- 'That’s fine. And can I have two stamps for postcards to Germany?'

3 Answer the questions. Choose answers from the box.
   - Where do you post letters? in a postbox, in a letter box
   - What do postmen do? deliver letters
   - What do you write on an envelope? the name, address and postcode
   - Where do you take a parcel? post office
   - Where do you put the parcel? on the scales
   - What do you put on an envelope/parcel? a stamp
   - Who takes parcels to people’s homes? the postman
   - Which three things can you send? a letter, a parcel, a postcard

4 Use the words to make questions. You need to add one more word.
   - please / Japan / to / parcel / is / how / this / ? How much is this parcel to Japan, please?
   - box / is / near / there / here / a / ?
   - scales / can / it / you / the / on / ?
   - Argentina / I / for / three / can / stamps / ?
   - letter / where / post / this / I / ?
   - Russia / much / is / postcard / how / a / ?
   - post / buy / envelopes / you / can / the / at / ?

5 Test yourself. Look at the pictures and cover the texts. Can you remember the sentences?
Unit 54

Read the text on the right.
Find words in the text to match the meanings.

- of another country which is not your country: **foreign**
- plan or organize: **arrange**
- money that a country uses: **currency**
- pay to use something for a short time: **rent**
- go to another country: **travel abroad**
- arrange and pay for something in advance: **book**
- put your things in a bag before you travel: **pack**
- a journey by plane: **flight**
- a place to stay, e.g. a hotel: **accommodation**

When you go abroad on holiday, you might need to arrange certain things. Firstly, you will probably need to book a flight and your accommodation. For some countries, you will need to take or send your passport to the embassy of that country to get a visa, and you might also need foreign currency. Some travellers like to hire a car before they go, and then get it at the airport. And when you pack your suitcase, don’t forget your passport!

Unit 55

1. Match 1 – 10 with a – k.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1 double</th>
<th>2 central</th>
<th>3 air</th>
<th>4 internet</th>
<th>5 room</th>
<th>6 I’m afraid</th>
<th>7 never</th>
<th>8 book</th>
<th>9 what</th>
<th>10 included</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a conditioning</td>
<td>b a shame</td>
<td>c in the price</td>
<td>d access</td>
<td>e room</td>
<td>f not</td>
<td>g TV</td>
<td>h heating</td>
<td>i mind</td>
<td>j service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete the conversation.

A Can you **recommend** a good hotel in New York?
B Yes, we (1) **recommend** in a great hotel last year – the Excelsior.
A Did all the rooms have a bathroom?
B Yes, they were all (2) **bathroom**.
A And did it have a minibar, and TV and everything?
B Yes, the room (3) **minibar** were great. And the hotel (4) **TV and everything** were really friendly and helpful too.
A How about the food?
B It was really good – in fact, it was (5) **good**. And the hotel wasn’t too expensive – it was about $50 a (6) **price**.
A That’s good, isn’t it? And has it got (7) **price**?
B I don’t know. We didn’t have a car.
A It sounds perfect. I think I’ll (8) **rent** a room, then.
Unit 56

1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

| 1. departures | 5. seat | a. luggage |
| 2. check-in | 6. hand | b. belt |
| 3. gate | 7. aisle | c. closed |
| 4. passport | 8. boarding | d. seat |
| 9. flight | | e. seven |
| | | f. card |
| | | g. call |
| | | h. control |
| | | i. desk |
| | | j. board |

2 Complete the sentences with one word. Use the Past Simple in questions 6 – 10.

1. I couldn’t carry my suitcases, so I put them on a ________________.
2. I had to show my passport and ________________ at the check-in desk.
3. I put my luggage on the ________________ and it was 25 kilos.
4. The check-in person said, ‘Have a good ________________.’
5. I was an hour late because my flight was ________________.
6. When I ________________ on the plane, somebody was in my seat.
7. I ________________ my seat belt and started reading the in-flight magazine.
8. It was sunny when we took off, but it was raining when the plane ________________ at Manchester Airport.
9. After we got off the plane, we went and ________________ our luggage.
10. When I ________________ through customs, there was nobody there.

Unit 57

One word is missing in each line of the text. Where from? Write a word from the box at the end.

sunbathed went get perfect holiday or flew rented resort

We had a lovely __________ holiday in France last year. We __________ to Marseille Airport and then we had to a bus to Cassis, which is a very nice holiday by the sea. We __________ an apartment in the centre of the town. Every morning we __________ a walk round the town, then we __________ the beach for an hour so. The weather was for the whole week.
Unit 58

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

She went on a guiding tour of the city. **She went on a guided tour of the city.**
1. We're going in a tour of the city this afternoon.
2. Did you go seeing in Paris?
3. We always go lost in a new place.
4. She made a lot of photos on her holiday.
5. Did you visit at the museum?
6. There were lots of typic tourists.
7. There's a good exhibition at the art museum.
8. Have you got a guided book about London, please?

Unit 59

1 Write words beginning with P and C.

- post
- a letter = put a letter in a letter box
- p. = where you buy stamps
- p. = the numbers and letters at the end of an address
- p. = the person who delivers the letters
- p. = letter box
- p. = you write these on holiday
- p. = you put a stamp on an envelope
- p. = %
- p. = you take this to the post office because it's too big for a letter box

- c. = the money of a country, e.g. dollars, euros
- c. = a place inside or outside a bank where you can get money with a card
- c. = e.g. give someone dollars and they give you the same amount in pesos
- c. = you have to pay this to a bank for changing money
- c. = a bank can charge 1% for changing money

2 Complete the questions.

- Can I have five stamps for postcards to Russia, please?
- How much is it to a kg parcel to Italy?
- Did you put a stamp on the ?
- How many letters did the postman today?
- What's the for the Brazilian Real?
- Can I change dollars pounds sterling here?
- Is there a de in the centre?
60 I can meet and greet people

A Introductions

Sam and Mary meet for the first time...

Jane: Sam, this is Mary.

Mary: Hello.

Sam: Hi. Nice to meet you.

two hours later...

Mary: Well, goodbye, Sam. Good to meet you.

Sam: Yes. I hope to see you again. Bye!

Glossary

bye a short form of goodbye
shake hands

1 Make sentences from the words.

1 meet / nice / hello / you / to ________________________

2 this / Max / Hanna / is ________________________

3 again / hope / you / bye / to / I / see ________________________

4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet ________________________

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Lucia: Emma, this is Alex.

Alex: Hi, Emma. ____________ to meet you.

Emma: ____________

2 Alex: Goodbye, Emma. I ____________ to see you ____________.

Emma: Yes. ____________

3 Chris: Jan, this is Dan.

Jan: ____________, Dan. Good ____________ ____________ ____________.

Dan: ____________, Jan.

4 Dan: Well, ____________, Jan. I hope ____________ ____________ again.

Jan: ____________ !
B Meeting a friend

Tess (T) meets her friend Matt (M) in a bar.

T Hi, Matt. How are you?
M Fine, thanks. And you?
T Yes, not bad.
M Good. And how's Sarah?
T Yeah, she's very well.

An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

M OK. I've got to go now. See you later.
T Sure. About 7.00?
M Yeah, that's fine.
T Good. See you then.
M OK. Bye.

3 Complete the phrases.

1 How are you?
2 I'm very well. And you?
3 Sarah?
4 She's very well.
5 See you soon.
6 Have got to do = have to do or must do (have to is more informal).

Glossary

how are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. (also how are things?)

fine or very well or not bad are common replies to 'How are you?' NOT very fine

have got to do = have to do OR must do (have got to is more informal)

4 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.

1 Jim Hi, How are you?
   Sam I'm very well. And you?
   Jim Yeah, not bad. And your wife?
   Sam She's very well.

C Saying hello and goodbye

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hello</th>
<th>goodbye</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anytime (24 hours)</td>
<td>before lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more informal</td>
<td>before lunch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi or hi there</td>
<td>morning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Test yourself. Cover the table above and answer the questions.

What do you say when you:

1 see someone anytime?
2 see someone before lunch?
3 see someone after 6.00 p.m.?
4 say goodbye at 11.00 p.m.?
## I can use special greetings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Say this to someone when:</th>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you say goodbye</td>
<td>have a nice day/evening</td>
<td>thanks, you too and you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have a good/lovely weekend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone is going to bed</td>
<td>goodnight, sleep well</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s Christmas/new year/Easter</td>
<td>happy/merry Christmas</td>
<td>happy Christmas, etc. the same to you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>happy New Year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>happy Easter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it’s their birthday</td>
<td>happy birthday</td>
<td>thank you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they’ve done something well or passed an exam</td>
<td>well done</td>
<td>thanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are getting married or having a baby</td>
<td>congratulations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>congratulations NOT well done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are going to do something difficult, e.g. before an exam</td>
<td>good luck NOT good lucky</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are going away, e.g. on holiday</td>
<td>have a good/nice holiday/time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>have a good journey</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>someone has arrived recently, or returned home after a long time</td>
<td>welcome to London</td>
<td>cheers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>welcome home/back</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1 Match 1 – 9 with a – j.

- Merry Christmas!  
  - I’m going to New York.   
  - Cheers!   
  - Goodnight.   
  - Hello! I’m back!   
  - I’m 21 today.   
  - It’s my driving test today.   
  - Bob and I are getting married.   
  - I’ve passed my driving test.   
  - Have a nice evening.

### 2 Complete the phrases.

1. Have a nice/good day/weekend/holiday.  
   - a. You too.  
   - b. The same to you.  
   - c. Good luck.  
   - d. Welcome home!  
   - e. Well done!  
   - f. Congratulations.  
   - g. Sleep well.  
   - h. Cheers!  
   - i. Have a good journey.  
   - j. Happy birthday!

2. Happy Christmas/New Year/Easter.  
   - a. The same to you.  
   - b. Oh, cheers.  
   - c. Goodbye  
   - d. See you later.  

### 3 Test yourself. Look at column one in the table and cover columns two and three. Can you remember the phrases and responses?
62 I can ask for information

A About people 🎉

Who do you live with, Tracey? And what's your brother like? And your boyfriend—what does he do?

How long have you known him? I understand you're learning Spanish. How often are the classes? And why Spanish?

Whose idea was it to live in Spain? What's wrong with England?

How about you? What do you think?

What kind of work can you do in Spain?

~ My parents, and my younger brother.
~ He's stupid— and a bit fat.
~ He works for an airline company.
~ About two years.
~ Yes, that's right.
~ Twice a week.
~ Because we want to live in Spain.
~ My boyfriend's.
~ He doesn't like the weather.
~ Yeah, I think it's a good idea.
~ My boyfriend can still work for his company, and I can get a job in a bar.

Glossary

What's wrong with England? = What's the problem with England?

spotlight whose and belong to

Whose money is that? = It's mine. (It's my money.) Who does this bag belong to? = It's Ben's. (The bag belongs to Ben.) Not Whose does this bag belong to?

1 Make questions from the words.

► for / do / work / who / you / ? Who do you work for?

1 you / often / there / go / how / do / ? How often do you go there?

2 like / what / music / do / kind of / you / ? What kind of music do you like?

3 he / does / what / do ? What does he do?

4 have / lived / how long / there / you / ? How long have you lived there?

5 wrong / Peter / with / what's / ? What's wrong with Peter?

6 this / to / belong / does / who / ? Whose is this?

7 his / like / what's / flat / ? What's his like flat?

8 like / you / why / her / don't / ? Why don't you like her?

2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

► Because she's horrible to me. ______

a Ten years. ______

b He's very angry with me. ______

c It's small but very nice. ______

d Twice a year. ______

e It's mine. ______

f He's a doctor. ______

3 Complete the dialogues.

► What kind of animal is it? I think it's a horse.

1 How ________ do you go? ~ Every week.

2 ________ jacket is this? ~ It's mine.

3 ________'s she like? ~ She's mine.

4 I don't speak German. ________ about you? ~ Yes, I speak a bit of German.

5 How ________ have you worked there? ~ Six months.

6 ________ does this belong to?

~ I'm not sure. I think it's Mark's.
B About places

What do you recommend? (= What do you think is good?)

How long is it open? (= How many hours?)

How far is it to the river? (= How many metres?)

How many places can we visit with this ticket?

Is the castle worth seeing? (= Do you recommend the castle?)

What time/When does the palace close/shut? (Un open)

Which restaurant do you recommend?

4 Circle the correct answers.
- How far/long is it to the museum?
  1 Which/what is your address?
  2 How long/time do you need?
  3 What hour/time does it open?
  4 How much/many places did you visit?
  5 Where's the nearest/next café?
  6 Is the museum worth to see/seeing?

5 Complete the questions.
- When does the post office open?
  1 How is it to the station?
  2 How places did you go to?
  3 There are two. do you want?
  4 's the phone number of the bank?
  5 It opens at 8.00, but when does it ?
  6 Is it going to see Notre Dame?
  7 Where's the underground station?
  8 There's a lot to see. What do you ?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Answer the questions or ask another student.
  1 Where do you live?
  2 How long have you lived there?
  3 Which places are worth visiting?
  4 How far are they from your home?
  5 Can you recommend any restaurants?
I can ask for things

A Requests and responses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Requests (in the classroom)</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Can you bring</strong> the dictionaries here, please?</td>
<td>✔ Sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Could you finish</strong> this exercise for homework, please?</td>
<td>OK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yuri, could you possibly take</strong> these books to the staffroom?</td>
<td>Yeah, sure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Elena, can you change places</strong> with Gabi?</td>
<td>Yeah, no problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Could you lend</strong> me a pen, Boris?</td>
<td>Yes, of course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dmitri, could you possibly wait</strong> here a few minutes?</td>
<td>✗ (No), I'm afraid I can't.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Glossary**

- **bring**
- **take**

**finish something** do or complete the last part of something

**change places** e.g. Elena sits in Gabi’s place and Gabi sits in Elena’s place

**lend** give something to someone to use for a short time

**wait** stay in one place for a short time until something happens

**I'm afraid I can't** = I'm sorry, but I can't **not** I'm afraid but I can't

**spotlight** Being polite

*Can* and *could* have the same meaning in the table. *Could you possibly ...?* is more polite, for a bigger request.

*Please* is very common and makes a request more polite.

*I'm afraid ...* is used to say politely that you are sorry about something.

1. Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

   - Can you ________ clean the ________ board?
   1. Can __________ lend __________ a pen? ~ Yes, __________ course.
   2. Could you __________ the books here, __________? ~ Yes, __________ problem.
   3. Could you __________ wait here a few __________? ~ I'm __________ I can't.
   4. Lia, can you __________ places __________ Maris, __________? ~ Yeah, __________

2. Use the words to write requests and responses. Use *can, could* and *could ... possibly* and different responses.

   - take / books / away
     
     A Could you take these books away, please?
     
     B Yes, sure.
     
   1. finish / exercise / homework
     
     A
     
     B
     
   2. Luca / change places / Maria
     
     A
     
     B
     
   3. bring / notebook / tomorrow
     
     A
     
     B
     
   4. lend / pencil
     
     A
     
     B
     
   5. wait / classroom a few minutes
     
     A
     
     B
B Asking for and giving permission

Could you lend me your dictionary?
Sure.

Could I borrow your pen?
I'm afraid I need it.

Is it all right if I sit in that chair?
Yes, that's fine.

Is it OK if I close the door?
Yes, sure.

Do you mind if I look at your answers?
No, go ahead.

Can I open the window?
Sure, go ahead.

Glossary

goahead or that's fine You say go ahead or that's fine when you give someone permission to do something.

all right = OK

Do you mind if ...? = Is it a problem for you if ...?
(The answer 'No, go ahead' means 'It's not a problem'.)

spotlight lend and borrow

If you borrow a pen from someone, you use their pen, then give it back.

If you lend someone a pen, you give them your pen to use for a short time.

Could I borrow your pen? = Could you lend me your pen?

3 Write new sentences. Change the bold words. The meaning must be the same.

- Can we sit down? Is it OK if we sit down?

1 Is it OK if I use this dictionary? Is it OK if I use this dictionary?

2 Is it OK if I make a coffee? Is it OK if I make a coffee?

3 Can I stay for another ten minutes? Is it OK to close the window?

4 Is it OK to close the window? Is it OK to close the window?

5 Can you lend me your book? Can you lend me your book?

6 Can I sit here? ~ Yes, of course. Can I sit here? ~ Yes, of course.

7 Can I use the computer? ~ I'm sorry but I need it. Can I use the computer? ~ I'm sorry but I need it.

8 Is it OK to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, sure. Is it OK to have my coffee here? ~ Yes, sure.

4 Ask for permission. Use different words in each sentence.

- You want to sit near the window. Can I sit near the window?

1 You want to go at one o'clock today. You want to go at one o'clock today.

2 You want to borrow a rubber. You want to borrow a rubber.

3 You want to go to the toilet. You want to go to the toilet.

4 You want to sit in a different seat. You want to sit in a different seat.

5 Test yourself. Write five more ways to give permission from this unit.

- Yes, sure. 3

1 4

2 5

SOCIAL ENGLISH 159
64 I can invite people

Inviting
Would you like to ... 
Do you want to ...
... go out for a meal/a drink? 
... come round for a coffee? 
... come to a party?

Saying yes
Yes, great! 
Yes, I'd love to! 
That sounds lovely/fun/good. 
That would be lovely/nice.

Saying no
I'm afraid I can't. 
I'm sorry, but I'm busy. 
I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema.

spotlight Would you like to... or Do you want to...?
Would you like to...? is a little more polite than Do you want to...

1 A word is missing. Where from? 
Write it at the end.
→ How/ tomorrow? about
1 Would you to come round later? ____________
2 Yes, I'd love. ____________
3 Do you want to out for dinner? ____________
4 That lovely. ____________
5 I'm afraid can't. ____________
6 That be nice. ____________
7 Do you want come to a party? ____________
8 I'm, but I'm busy tonight. ____________

2 Complete the questions and answers.
→ Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
Say yes.
1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
Say yes.
2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
Say no politely.
3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
Say yes.
4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
Say no politely.

A Do you want to go out for a drink? ____________
B That would be lovely. ____________
A Would ____________?
B Yes, g__________?
A Do ____________?
B I'm a__________
A Would ____________?
B Yes, that s__________
A Do ____________?
B I'd ____________ , but ____________ gym.
I can make suggestions

Ask for a suggestion
What shall we do this weekend?
Where shall we go?

Make a suggestion
Shall we go to the beach?
Maybe we could go out for a meal.
What about going to an exhibition?
Let's go out for a drink.

Say 'yes'
Yes. (that's a) good/great idea!
Yeah, let's do that.
OK, fine.

Say 'no'. or make another suggestion
I'm not sure (about that).
Well, I'd prefer to stay at home.
Hmm... or perhaps we could go to the mountains.

1 Put the dialogue in order.
I'd prefer to get them at the station.
The weather's nice, so
Yes, good idea.
What shall we do this weekend?
Maybe we could take the train.
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
what about going to the beach?

2 Correct the mistakes.
We could to have a party this weekend. We could have a party this weekend.
1 What do we do this evening?
2 Do you have a suggest?
3 What about go to see a film?
4 I'd prefer go by train.
5 Yes, that a good idea.

3 Write in a word where there is a /.
1 A What / we do / evening? B What shall we do this evening?
   A I'm / sure / that
2 A What / we / on Saturday? B Perhaps we / go out for a meal
   A OK, let's / that
3 A Where / we go / afternoon? B /'s go to an exhibition.
   A Yeah / 's a good /
A Offering food, drink or help

Offering food or drink
Would you like a biscuit? Do you want something to eat?

Accept = say yes
Refuse = say no
Yes, please.
No, thanks.
Thanks.
Thanks. Could I have...?

Offering help
Can I give you a hand? Do you need some help?

Accept
Yes, please.
Thanks.
Thanks a lot.
Thank you (very much).

Refuse
No, I’m fine, thanks.
No, don’t worry.

Spotlight Saying thank you

Thanks or Thanks a lot are the most common ways of thanking someone in spoken English. Thank you (very much) is more formal.

1 Correct one letter of one word in each sentence.

Could you like something to drink? Would

1 Can I give you a band? ~ No, don’t worry.
2 Do you want something to eat? ~ Thanks. Would I have a biscuit?
3 So you need some help? ~ No, I’m fine, thanks.
4 Would you like a drink? ~ Thinks. Could I have a coffee?

2 One word or contraction is missing. Where from? Write it at the end.

No, don’t worry.
1 Can I give you a band?
2 Thank you much.
3 Would you a drink?
4 Thanks lot.
5 No, fine, thanks.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

Offer someone food.

1 Offer someone a drink.
Accept, and ask for some water.
2 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
3 Offer someone food.
Accept, and ask for an apple.
4 Offer someone help.
Say no.

Do you want something to eat?

A Would a drink?
B Yes, water?
A Do help?
B No, , thanks.
A Would eat?
B Yes, an apple?
A Can hand?
B No, worry.
B Offering to do something

Would you like me to make the dinner? ~ That's very kind of you.

Shall I carry your bag? ~ OK. Thanks.

Do you want me to answer that? ~ Yes, please.

Let me pay for the drinks. ~ That's very kind of you.

spotlight  

We use *let me* + verb when we really want to do something for someone.

*Let me* pay for lunch.  *Let me* get the train tickets.

*Let me* give you a lift to the station = *Let me* take you in my car.

4 Match 1 – 6 with a – g.

- I'm really hungry. _______
  1. I haven't got much money. _______
  2. Are the dishes dirty? _______
  3. I have to go to the airport. _______
  4. This suitcase is really heavy. _______
  5. Is that someone at the door? _______
  6. I don't feel very well. _______

- Let me carry it for you.  
  a. Let me carry it for you.
  b. Do you want me to ring the doctor?
  c. Shall I make you a sandwich? ✓
  d. That's OK. Let me pay for the meal.
  e. Yes. Would you like me to wash up?
  f. Let me give you a lift.
  g. Yes. Shall I see who it is?

5 Circle the correct word.

- Shall (Let) me answer the door. 5 Shall I/I'll carry that for you?
  1. That's very kind for/ of you.
  2. Let/ Let's me get the shopping.
  3. Let/ Shall I answer the phone?
  4. Would/ Do you like me to help?

6 Complete the conversations. Write one word or contraction (e.g. *it's, I'll*) in each gap.

1 A I'm just going to the post office.
   B Well, *let* __________ me give __________ a __________.
   A Oh, __________. That's very __________ of __________.

2 A I'm really tired!
   B OK. __________ __________ the dinner for you?
   A Yes, __________. And then *let* __________ do the washing-up afterwards.

3 A Jeannie, that shopping looks really heavy. *Let* __________ __________ it for you.
   B Oh, __________, very much.

4 A Oh, no! That's the phone again!
   B Do you __________ me to answer it?
### Saying sorry/apologizing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Saying sorry/apologizing</th>
<th>Responses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sorry, I don’t speak English very well.</td>
<td>That’s all right. I’ll speak slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sorry, I’ve broken a cup.</td>
<td>That’s OK. Don’t worry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m very sorry – I’ve lost your pen.</td>
<td>It doesn’t matter. I’ve got lots of pens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I forgot to post your letter. I’m really sorry.</td>
<td>Never mind. I can post it later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sorry I’m late. The traffic was terrible.</td>
<td>Oh, don’t worry about it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>apologize to someone</th>
<th>say sorry to someone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rude OPP polite</td>
<td>say sorry to someone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that’s all right/don’t worry/it doesn’t matter/never mind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break PT broke</td>
<td>lose PT PP lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget PT forget PP forgotten OPP remember</td>
<td>really sorry very sorry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>really sorry</td>
<td>sorry I’m late NOT sorry for be late</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### spotlight (I’m) sorry

We can also use (I’m) sorry to ask someone to repeat something:

- Sorry, could you repeat that, please? - Sure, no problem.
- I’m sorry, what was your name again? - It’s Marianne.

### 1 Correct the mistakes.

- I’m sorry for be late.
  - I’m sorry, I’m late.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’m really sorry. I’ve lose your dictionary.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Don’t mind.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’m sorry, I’ve forget your book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>No worry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’ve break your cup – I’m very sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>It isn’t matter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’m really sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>all right.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Sorry I’m late.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Don’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’m sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>It doesn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>It’s broken – I’m very sorry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Oh, never</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>I’m sorry late. I missed the bus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>That’s OK.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>, could you repeat that, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Sure, no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Did he you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Yes, he was very sorry.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Did he say sorry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>No, he’s very</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3 Test yourself. Cover the responses in the table and read the sentences on the left. Give correct responses.
I think the school is excellent.

He wants our opinion of the course.

I thought it was a very funny book.

What do you think of London?

I like this dress. What do you think?

Max said the course was a waste of money.

Put the words in order, and add one more word to make a sentence.

1. very / I / good / it's
   I think it's very good.

2. you / agree / I
   I don't think it's very good.

3. don't / very / I / good / it's
   I don't like it very much.

4. waste / it / money / a / was
   I think it's not very good.

5. I / like / personally / didn't
   I disagree with you. I loved it.

6. one / I / other / prefer
   Personally, I don't like big cities.

Complete the dialogues.

1. I like this. ~ Yes, I agree.

2. Pete likes it. What's your opinion?
   ~ Well, I don't think it's very good.

3. What did you think of her idea?
   ~ Personally, I don't think it was very good.

4. I really like her new flat. ~ I'm not sure.
   ~ I disagree. I thought it was great.

Glossary

think PT thought have an opinion about something
excellent very good
agree with someone have the same opinion as
someone NOT I disagree with someone have a different opinion
I don't think it's very good NOT I think it's not very good
personally You can use personally to introduce your opinion.
I'm not sure You can use I'm not sure to disagree politely.
prefer like one thing more than another
a waste of money a bad way to use money (also a waste of time)

ABOUT YOU Do you agree or disagree? Write your opinion, or ask another student what they think.

1. I think people watch too much TV.

2. Smoking's bad for you.

3. I think football's boring.

4. Money makes you happy.

5. Public transport in my country is excellent.
I can use the phone

A Phone vocabulary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone numbers</th>
<th>What’s your phone number? ~ It’s 245731. What’s your mobile number? ~ It’s 07700 900 796. What’s the (area) code for Liverpool? ~ It’s 0151.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone verbs</th>
<th>You call or ring someone. prang</th>
<th>= phone someone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You text someone.</td>
<td>= send someone a text (message) e.g. CUL8R = see you later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You take a message.</td>
<td>= take information during a phone call and give it to someone else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You leave a message.</td>
<td>= give information to someone on the phone who then gives it to someone else</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phone problems</th>
<th>The line is engaged/busy.</th>
<th>= the person you phoned is speaking on the phone already</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The person is out/isn’t in.</td>
<td>= not there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It’s the wrong number.</td>
<td>= you make a mistake with the number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The battery’s flat on the mobile.</td>
<td>= no electricity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Same or different? Write S or D.
   - He phoned/rang his sister. S
   - What’s your phone/mobile number? D
   - ... two six oh/zero four ... D
   - I left/took a message. S
   - I’m sorry, she isn’t in/’s out. D
   - The line was busy/engaged. S
   - I texted him/sent him a text. S

2. Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.
   1. Did you ring__________ Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but the line was e__________ . I’ll p__________ her later.
   2. What’s your phone n__________ ? ~ It’s 345489. And the c__________ for Oxford is 01865.
   3. Did you c__________ Sue last night? ~ Yes, but she was o__________ , so I left a m__________ . I r__________ , her mobile too, but I think the b__________ was flat.
   4. Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you’ve got the w__________ number.

3. ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.
   1. What’s your phone number, area code and mobile number? _________________________________
   2. Who do you ring most often? _________________________________
   3. How long do you spend on the phone every day? _________________________________
   4. Do you text a lot? If so, who to? _________________________________
Laura (L) is phoning Brenda (B).

B Hello?
L Is that Brenda?
B Yes, speaking.
L Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn.
B Hi, Laura, how are you?
L I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?
B Yes, just a moment—I'll get her for you...

Anton Jackson (AJ) is speaking to a receptionist (R).

R Hello?
AJ Oh, hello, can I speak to Mr Ellis, please?
R I'm sorry, but he's out at the moment. Who's calling?
AJ It's Anton Jackson.
R Right, and do you want to leave a message?
AJ Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll ring him back this evening?
R Of course, no problem.
AJ Thanks very much. Goodbye.

4 Tick (✓) the correct response.

- Can I speak to Sam, please?
  - He's not in at the moment. ✓ He's not in just a moment. □

  1 Hello?
    - Speaking. □ Oh, hello, is that Kamal? □
  2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?
    - Just a moment. □ It's Natasha. □
  3 Hello, is that Galina?
    - Oh, hello, this is Carla. □ Speaking. □
  4 Hello, this is Angela Brandt.
    - Oh, hello, how are you? □ Who's calling? □

5 Complete the conversations.

1 A Hello?
   B Hello. Is that____ Marisa?
   A Yes, (1) ________________ .
   B Oh, hello. (2) ________________ Dagmar.
   A Oh, hello, Dagmar.
   B Is Mikki (3) ________________, ________ ?
   A I'm sorry, he's out at (4) ________________ .
     Can I take a message?
   B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (5) ________________ him ________ after lunch.

2 A Hello?
   B Oh, can I (6) ________________ Tibor, please?
   A Yes, (7) ________________ moment. I'll (8) ________________ him for you.

3 A Hello?
   B Oh, hello. (9) ________________ Joanna?
   A Yes, (10) ________________ .
   B Hello, Joanna, (11) ________________ 's Rudy.
   A Hi, Rudy. How are you?
Unit 60

1 Do these have the same meaning or a different meaning? Write S or D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Afternoon!</th>
<th>Good afternoon!</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Morning!</td>
<td>Good morning!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hi!</td>
<td>Bye!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I’m fine.</td>
<td>I’m very well.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>See you later.</td>
<td>See you tomorrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Good to meet you.</td>
<td>Nice to meet you.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td>How are things?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Hello.</td>
<td>Hi, there.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Bye!</td>
<td>Goodbye!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>How do you do?</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>I’ve got to go.</td>
<td>I must go.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Find nine more phrases. You can go up ↑, down ↓, or across →.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>evening</th>
<th>hope</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>how</th>
<th>do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>later</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>3 not</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>again</td>
<td>2 how</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>soon</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>5 shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>hi</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>7 nice</td>
<td>6 see</td>
<td>hands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 61

What do you say in these situations?

1 It’s Christmas Day. **Happy Christmas!**

1 It’s your friend’s birthday. ________________

2 You say goodbye to a colleague on Friday afternoon. ________________

3 Someone tells you they are getting married. ________________

4 A friend is going to take an exam. ________________

5 A friend has passed an exam. ________________

6 Someone has returned home after a long time. ________________

7 A friend is starting a holiday tomorrow. ________________

8 It’s the first day of January. ________________
Unit 62

1 What is the correct question word or phrase for each answer?

- When/What time? ~ 7.30 p.m.
- ~ Fifteen.
- ~ Because I like it.
- ~ Ten kilometres.
- ~ Twice a week.

2 Circle the correct form then write your answers.

- What's/How's your English like?
- I've got one sister. What's/How about you?
- And what do/are you do?
- And what does/is your best friend do?
- How often/many do you study English every week?
- How long/long time have you studied English?
- What kind/kind of games do you like?

Unit 63

1 Complete the sentences with I or you.

- Can I borrow a dictionary, please?
- Do you mind if I go now?
- I'm afraid I need this.
- Could you possibly carry this for me?
- Can you lend me your bike, please?
- Is it OK if I leave the car here?
- Could I borrow €10, please?
- Is it all right if I use your phone?
- Could you take it to the postbox, please?
- Dina, could she change places with Mia?

2 Find five more responses in the box to the request. Write them below.

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

- Yes, sure.
- ...
- ...
- ...
- ...

REVIEW: SOCIAL ENGLISH 169
Unit 64

Correct one mistake in each sentence.

Do you want to come at a party tonight?

1. A Would you want to have lunch tomorrow?
   B I'm afraid but I can't.

2. A Do you like to go skiing this weekend?
   B Yes, that is fun!

3. A Would you like to go round here for a drink tonight?
   B Yes, I love to, but I'm busy.

4. A Do you want come round for a meal at the weekend?
   B I sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65

Complete the dialogue.

A Would you like... to go out tomorrow?
B Yes. Where... we go?
A Well, we... go swimming.
B Mmm. I'm not about that. It's a bit cold for swimming.
A OK. What... going to an exhibition?
A Yes, that's a good... do that.

Unit 66

Change two words to make the pairs of sentences correct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yes, thanks.</th>
<th>No, please.</th>
<th>Yes, please. No, thanks.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Would you want a sandwich?</td>
<td>Do you like a drink?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do you need a help?</td>
<td>Do you want some hand?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>No, I'm worry, thanks.</td>
<td>No, don't fine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Thanks a very.</td>
<td>Thank you lot much.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Shall me pay for the coffees.</td>
<td>Let I do that for you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>That's much kind of you.</td>
<td>Thank you very very.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Unit 67

Read the situations, then write the dialogues. Use as many different phrases as possible.

1. Someone lends you a pen and you lose it.
   A. I'm sorry, I've lost your pen.
   B. That's OK, don't worry.

2. Someone asks you to post a letter yesterday, but you forgot.
   A. ___________________________
   B. ___________________________

3. You arrange to meet someone, but you are late.
   A. ___________________________
   B. ___________________________

4. You make coffee for someone, but break one of their cups.
   A. ___________________________
   B. ___________________________

5. Someone says something to you, but you can't hear it.
   A. ___________________________
   B. ___________________________

Unit 68

Make words from the letters. Use the definitions to help you.

1. To have an idea about something
   - hiktn think

2. What you think about something
   - noipoin

3. Very good
   - telxecnle

4. Have a different opinion from someone
   - gredeasi

5. Like one thing more than another
   - rerepf

6. Used to introduce your opinion
   - spanerlloy

7. A bad use of money
   - stofaewa

   money

Unit 69

1. Rewrite the underlined words but keep the meaning the same.

   - I'm sorry, Paul is out. _isn't in_
   1. I can't phone her now. ___________________________
   2. Is that Sue? – Yes, this is Sue. ___________________________
   3. I'll call you back later. ___________________________
   4. Can I speak to Anton? – Yes, wait a minute. ___________________________
   5. She texted me earlier. ___________________________

2. Write the phone conversation in the right order.

   Yes. Just a moment – I'll get her.   A. _______
   Hello? 1.  B. ___________________________
   Hello? ✓ 2. A. ___________________________
   Hello, Keira. How are you? 3. B. ___________________________
   Is that Cheryl? 4. A. ___________________________
   I'm fine, thanks. Er, is Jessica in? 5. B. ___________________________
   Thanks. 6. A. ___________________________
   Yes, speaking. 7. B. ___________________________
   Hi. It's Keira. ___________________________
I can use common adjectives

A Common opposites

1 She's asleep. OPP awake
2 The bird's dead. OPP alive
3 He's very strong. OPP weak
4 She's a rich woman. OPP poor

5 These are common names in Italy. OPP unusual
6 This Swiss knife's very useful. OPP useless
7 The screen is very wide. OPP narrow
8 The children are noisy. OPP quiet

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after be.
It's a quiet village. The village is quiet.
You can't use alive, awake and asleep before a noun.
The man is alive. Not an alive man.

True or false? Write T or F.

1 The River Nile is very narrow. _____
2 Julius Caesar is still alive. _____
3 People are noisy at football matches. _____
4 Dictionaries are useless. _____
5 Some people talk when they're asleep. _____
6 Elephants are very strong. _____
7 America is a poor country. _____
8 Toyota cars are common in Japan. _____
9 Pasta is unusual in Italy. _____

Write the opposite of the bold word.

1 They're very rich. poor
2 It's a useless knife.
3 My arms are quite strong.
4 Is he alive? strong
5 The people are very poor.
6 It's a quiet town.
7 The garden's quite wide.
8 That's very common.
9 Is she awake?
10 It's quite a narrow road.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the adjectives and their opposites.
### Classroom habits

#### Teachers:
- **Simon**: I tell my students to write new words in a vocabulary notebook. I think it's really helpful.
- **Jill**: It's very annoying when students are late for class.
- **Martin**: When students do activities, I have to give clear instructions.
- **Carol**: I don't like students who talk when I’m listening to other students. That's really irritating.

#### Students:
- **Petra**: It's impossible to remember everything, so it's necessary to revise things you've studied in class.
- **Ivan**: I write new words on my hand, and then on my arms. It's a strange thing to do, and some students think I'm mad.
- **Yoko**: I repeat new words four or five times; it's the only way to remember.
- **Jean Pierre**: In English, you often write words in one way and say them in another; it's very confusing.

### Write SYN (synonym) or OPP (opposite) next to each pair of words.

1. possible/impossible OPP __________
2. mad/crazy __________
3. annoying/irritating __________
4. necessary/unnecessary __________
5. clear/confusing __________
6. odd/strange __________

### Complete the sentences.

1. I've got two dictionaries. One of them is __________.
2. His explanation was very __________; I didn’t understand anything.
3. An old man in the street was very __________ and gave me directions.
4. It's __________ to fly round the world in five hours.
5. My brother has got three jobs, and works every day of the year. I think he's __________.
6. I was the __________ person to come by car; the others took the bus or walked.
7. Cookery books are useful, but they aren’t __________.
8. My cat is very __________. He likes dog food more than cat food.
9. He gave me very __________ instructions to get to the house, so I had no problems.
10. My sister talks all the time when I'm watching TV: it's very __________.
I can use common adverbs

A Emphasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| only         | We use **only** to say ‘no more than’.  
* She was **only** 17 when she got married. (It’s unusual to get married at 17.)  
* We can walk to the station – it’s **only** five minutes. (Not 15 or 20.) |
| even         | We often use **even** before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe.  
* It’s cold here, **even** in summer. (In most places, it’s warm in the summer.)  
* My older brother is 1.90m, and my younger brother is **even** taller. |
| still        | We use **still** to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.  
* After 25 years, I **still** love my job. (I continue to love my job.)  
* Do they live in Paris now? – No, they’re **still** in London. |
| especially   | We use **especially** to say ‘more than others’ or ‘more than usual’.  
* We liked the towns in the south, **especially** Seville. (Seville was the best.)  
* It’s **very** hot here, **especially** in July and August. (July and August are the hottest.) |

1 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

1 It’s six kilometres to the next town. (only)  
2 He’s 75 and he plays tennis. (still)  
3 It’s nice there, in the morning. (especially)  
4 There are three students in the class. (only)  
5 He works on Sundays. (even)  
6 She’s at university. (still)

2 Circle the correct answer.

1 He was only/even 15 when he left school.  
2 I’ve seen the film five times and I even/still enjoy it.  
3 The students are very nice, still/particularly Marcel.  
4 There are even/only three bridges like this in the world.  
5 It was cold yesterday but it’s even/still colder today.  
6 I study hard but my English is still/only terrible.

3 Complete the sentences.

1 He’s ninety, but he **still** drives a car.  
2 Four people came to the party; it was a bit sad.  
3 They’ve been in Hong Kong for ten years and they **like** living there.  
4 I love fish, **salmon**.  
5 He can’t drive; he’s **15**.  
6 Jacqui’s thin, but her sister is **thinner**.  
7 She enjoyed the book, **first part**.
a bit/a little | quite | very | extremely | absolutely
---|---|---|---|---
**a bit/a little** | Use **a bit** or **a little** before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (not **a bit** good)
The lesson was **a bit** boring. **It's a little** warmer than yesterday.
**quite** | = more than **a bit**, but less than **very**
The film was **quite** interesting. **The town is quite** big.
**extremely** | = **a bit** stronger than **very**
Use **extremely** before gradable adjectives (see spotlight).
**absolutely** | Use **absolutely** before ungradable adjectives (see spotlight) for emphasis.
**really** | = **very**, **extremely** or **absolutely**
You can use **really** with gradable and ungradable adjectives, and with verbs.

4. Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.
   - It was **quite**/a bit interesting.
   - This programme is **really**/absolutely terrible.
   1. The weather was **very**/absolutely nice.
   2. Her new shoes are **very**/absolutely wonderful.
   3. My sister is **a bit**/a little untidy.
   4. I **really**/extremely want to go to Australia.
   5. She was **really**/extremely friendly.
   6. Their flat is **a bit**/quite nice.
   7. The hotel was **very**/really good.
   8. The boat is **extremely**/really enormous.

5. Rewrite the sentences. Use an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined word(s).
   - The film was **a bit** boring. **The film was a little** boring.
   - The children were **really** fantastic. **The children were absolutely** fantastic.
   1. He was **very** good.
   2. The holiday was **absolutely** wonderful.
   3. She's a **little** unfriendly.
   4. The kitchen was **extremely** clean.
   5. The room was **a bit** small.
   6. Her new boyfriend is **really** awful.
   7. They're **really** nice people.
   8. The weather was **absolutely** terrible.
I can use irregular verbs

A Past tenses

Here are some common irregular verbs with their past tense forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>brought</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>flew</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>kept</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>ran</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>stood</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the right answers.
   - Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'a' in the past tense.
     sit ring swim bring
   - Three verbs which have the same form in the infinitive and the past tense.
     put cost read run
   - Three verbs which change from 'i' to 'o' in the past tense.
     write drive give win
   - Three verbs which change the final 'd' to 't' in the past tense.
     spend stand send lend
   - Three verbs which change from 'o' to 'e' in the past tense.
     know hold cost grow
   - Three verbs which form the past tense with '-ought'.
     teach buy bring think

2 Find eight more past tense verbs.

3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb in the past tense.
   - This coat cost more than €500.
   - I was so tired, I slept for ten hours.
   - We swam across the river.
   - I rang her on my mobile.
   - He wrote the email but found it difficult to send it.
   - They saw the film last night.
   - She bought a new car yesterday.
   - They stayed up when he came in.
   - We took a taxi, then we walked to the cinema.

4 Test yourself. Cover the past tense forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past tense forms?
B Past participles

Here are the same irregular verbs as on page 175 with their past participle forms. A more complete list is on page 202.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be</th>
<th>brought</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>found</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>kept</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>run</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>swum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>driven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flown</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>give</td>
<td>given</td>
<td>lend</td>
<td>pnt</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>go</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoken</td>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grown</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>rung</td>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>write</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Eleven more of these verbs have the same form in the past tense and past participle, e.g. find, found, found. Write the past tense/past participle below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>find</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>bring</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>keep</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>put</th>
<th>fly</th>
<th>feel</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>stand</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Write the past participle of the verbs below. What is similar about them?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fly</th>
<th>find</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>take</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>know</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Complete the questions with a past participle of a verb from the box. You will answer the questions in Exercise 8.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>teach</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>swim</th>
<th>sleep</th>
<th>speak</th>
<th>send</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>lend</th>
<th>win</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Have you ever ...

1. lent someone a lot of money?
2. given an English newspaper?
3. read a Porsche?
4. taken a lesson?
5. known any money?
6. sent an email to the wrong person?
7. gone on a boat?
8. slept in the Mediterranean Sea?
9. won to a famous person?

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.

9 Test yourself. Cover the past participle forms and look at the infinitives. What are the past participle forms?
I can use phrasal verbs

A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs have a verb (sit, stand, get, etc.) and a particle (up, on, off, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give something up</td>
<td>He had to give up football.</td>
<td>stop doing something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on with someone</td>
<td>I like Sue; we get on well.</td>
<td>have a good relationship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off</td>
<td>The plane couldn't take off.</td>
<td>leave the ground and start flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow up</td>
<td>When Ben grows up, he wants to be a vet.</td>
<td>change from a child to an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find out something</td>
<td>I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.</td>
<td>find a fact or piece of information you need/want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go out</td>
<td>Let's go out this evening.</td>
<td>leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. cinema, disco, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the correct particle.

- I'd like to lie up/down for a few minutes.
- 1 Can we find out/over the cost of the tickets?
- 2 Where did she grow out/up?
- 3 He fell over/on when he ran down the road.
- 4 Do you want to go out/off this evening?
- 5 Pearl wants to give on/up her job.
- 6 Do you get in/on well with your parents?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

- Pasha doesn't want to go out this evening; she's tired.
- 1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find ____________________.
- 2 Everyone stood ____________________ when he came into the room.
- 3 Maciej doesn't spend much time with his sister; they don't get _____________________ very well.
- 4 She sat ____________________ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie ____________________ on the bed.
- 6 I told my brother to give ____________________ smoking.
- 7 The plane took ____________________ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell ____________________ in the street, but several people helped her.

3 Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. What are the phrasal verbs? Then, cover the meanings and examples and look at the phrasal verbs in the table. What does each verb mean?
B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs don’t have an object.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go up</td>
<td>The price of petrol will <strong>go up</strong> soon.</td>
<td>increase, become more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on with something</td>
<td>Can we <strong>carry on</strong> with the exercise?</td>
<td>continue with something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go back</td>
<td>She wants to <strong>go back</strong> to London.</td>
<td>return to a place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>I always <strong>wake up</strong> at 7.00 a.m.</td>
<td>stop sleeping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other phrasal verbs need an object. It can go before or after the particle.

- **Take off** your jacket.
- **Put on** your shoes.
- **Take** your jacket off.
- **Put your shoes on.**
- **Could you turn on** the light?
- **Put your shoes on.**
- **Could you turn on** the light?
- **Put your shoes on.**

When the object is a pronoun (e.g. *it, them*) it must go before the particle.

- **Take it off.** (not **Take off it.**)
- **Could you turn it on?** (not ... turn **on it.**)
- **Can I try them on?** (not ... try **on them.**)
- **Look it up** in that dictionary. (not ... **Look up it.**)

4 Change the bold words to *it* or *them*. Put the pronoun in the correct place.

- Look up the word. **Look it up.**
- Look up both words. **Look them up.**
- **Put those socks on.**
- Take off your jacket. **Take it off.**
- Try on these trousers. **Try them on.**
- Turn on the TV. **Turn on it.**
- **Put your coat on.**

5 Are the sentences correct or do they need the pronoun *it*? Where? Look at the examples.

- Could you turn on, please? **Could you turn it on, please?**
- Please sit down. **correct**
- Could I try on?
- Do you want to go back?
- You can take off if you’re hot.
- Look up in the dictionary.
- His salary will go up soon.
- Do they want to stop or carry on?
- Did you put on?
- What time do you usually wake up?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 Where did you grow up?
2 How do you feel when you wake up?
3 How often do you go out in the evenings?
4 Do you get on well with people who live near you?
5 When you buy clothes, do you usually try them on first?
I can use prepositions of time

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at</th>
<th>a time</th>
<th>a mealtime</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at six o'clock</td>
<td>at breakfast/lunch/dinner (time)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>a day</td>
<td>a date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on Tuesday</td>
<td>on September 1st</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on Friday evening</td>
<td>on the sixth of May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>a part of a day</td>
<td>a month, year or century</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the morning</td>
<td>in July/December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the afternoon</td>
<td>in 1990/2050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in the evening</td>
<td>in the 21st century = 2000 – 2099</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>spotlight</th>
<th>at</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We also use at in these phrases.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I relax at the weekend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Some doctors work at night. NOT in the night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you doing at Christmas/at New Year?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.

1. in the spring/February 15th/the evening
2. at teatime/2005/the weekend
3. in August/summer/Friday
4. on April/your birthday/Saturdays
5. at night/the morning/half past seven
6. on midnight/June 2nd/Sunday afternoon
7. at breakfast/midday/the autumn
8. on winter/Christmas Day/the fifth of May
9. in the afternoon/dinnertime/2008
10. at New Year/the evening/six o'clock

2 Write the correct preposition in each space.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left (on) Thursday morning (1) about nine, and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) Friday we had lunch with an old friend who I met at university (6) 1997. Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant, and got home (8) midnight. (9) the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We’d like to go back for the Brighton Festival which starts (10) 6 May.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

When do you ...
1. get up? ____________________________ 6. saw your family? ____________________________
2. study English? ______________________ 7. went on holiday? ______________________
3. go swimming? ______________________ 8. went to the mountains? __________________
4. watch TV? ______________________ 9. went to bed very late? __________________
5. go to sleep? ______________________ 10. went to a party? ______________________
A Past, present and future

Look at the diary and read the sentences below. It’s midday on Thursday, 11 April.

I was in Moscow last week.
I saw Jon and Trish three days ago.
I had lunch with Liz yesterday.
I went out with Brian last night.
I’m going to the cinema this evening.

I’ve got a meeting tomorrow morning.
I’m going to stay at Gary’s this weekend.
Then I’m in London for three days next week.
I have a doctor’s appointment next Thursday.
I’m seeing my parents in ten days’ time.

1 True or false? Write T or F.
   ▶ I was in Moscow last week. T
   1 I got back from Moscow four days ago. ___
   2 I saw Jon and Trish this week. ___
   3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. ___
   4 I met Brian yesterday. ___
   5 I was in London last week. ___
   6 I’m going to the cinema this afternoon. ___
   7 I’m going out tomorrow evening. ___
   8 I’m seeing Scott in four days’ time. ___
   9 I’m seeing the doctor in a week’s time. ___
   10 I’m going to the theatre next Friday. ___

2 Complete the sentences.
   ▶ We saw them yesterday evening.
   1 She saw Paul about three days ___
   2 I wrote Pete’s birthday in my ___
   3 She rang me at 10 o’clock last ___
   4 He wants to come in a week’s ___
   5 She can’t come. She’s got a dentist’s ___
   6 I’m going to Italy ___

3 Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.
   ▶ I had lunch with Liz a week ago.
   1 ___________________________ on Thursday evening.
   2 ___________________________ five days ago.
   3 ___________________________ last weekend.
   4 ___________________________ tomorrow morning.
   5 ___________________________ in three days’ time.
   6 ___________________________ this weekend.
B Words and phrases often confused

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>before/after</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.00 11.00 12.00 Lunch 2.00 3.00 4.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We did some shopping before lunch. We went for a coffee after lunch.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>at the moment/ in a minute</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm very busy at the moment. = I'm very busy now. not in this moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll speak to you in a minute. = I'll speak to you one or two minutes from now.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>soon/later</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'm going home soon. = I'm going home in a short time from now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can I talk to you later? = Can I talk to you in the future but not now?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>until</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We worked until ten o'clock. = We stopped work at 10.00. not by 10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I want to stay here until July. = I don't want to go before July.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for/since</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I moved to this house. Sarah was born.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah is now five years old.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've lived here since Sarah was born.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've lived here for five years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Circle the correct answer.
- Dinner will be ready at/in a minute.
  1 I had a shower before/after I went to bed.
  2 We went home before/after work and watched TV.
  3 I usually work until/for one o'clock, and then have a sandwich.
  4 She's in the library at/in the moment.
  5 I haven't seen her for/since last week.
  6 I'm very busy this morning. Can I phone you later/soon?
  7 She has worked here for/since seven years.
  8 The taxi will be here later/soon. Are you ready?

5 Complete the sentences. Use soon, later, before, at, in, until, for or since.
- I had a rest after lunch.
  1 She waited ___________ 7.00, then went home.
  2 He's been here ___________ three weeks.
  3 I'm getting tired. Can we go home ___________ ?
  4 Can you help me? - Yes, I'll be with you ___________ a minute.
  5 What are you doing ___________ the moment?
  6 We haven't seen them ___________ last summer.
  7 I wrote the email ___________ I went out.
  8 I'm busy tomorrow. Can we go out ___________ this week?

6 Translate the words in bold in this unit into your own language.
I can use prepositions of place and movement

A  **in, at, on**

**at**  at a position, for example a place to meet or where something happens

- Let's meet at the bank/at the bus stop.
- I saw him at the match/at the party at home/at work/at school.

**in**  in a three-dimensional space

- in a box, a cupboard
- in a room, an office, a flat
- in a garden, a park

**on**  on a line

- on the road, the coast, the river

**on a surface**  on the table, the wall

- on the first floor

**in or on?**  He's in the river. She's on the river.

1. Circle the correct preposition.

- I live in/on Canada.
- She's not in/on her office.
- The photos are in/on the wall.
- We met in/at a golf match.
- We stayed in/on a lovely village.
- She's swimming in/on the pool.
- Barcelona is in/on the coast.
- We live at/in the countryside.

2. Complete the questions with *in, on, or at*.

- Which country do you live **in**?
- Do you live **in** a village, a town, or a city?
- Do you live **in** a flat or a house?
- Is your town **in** a river?
- Which floor is your bedroom **in**?
- Do you like walking **in** the countryside?
- Are you learning English **in** school, **at** work, or **in** an English-speaking country?

3. **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.
The people are **in front of** the garage.
The postman is **between** mum and dad.
The adults are **behind** the children.
The tree is **near** the house.

**4 True or false? Write T or F.**

1. The tree's opposite the house. **F**
2. The blue car's near the house. **T**
3. The big window is above the door. **T**
4. The people are opposite the garage. **F**
5. The postman's next to mum. **T**
6. The children are behind mum and dad. **T**
7. The girl is in front of the postman. **T**
8. The front door's below the big window. **T**
9. The bus stop's next to the green car. **T**

**5 Complete the sentences.**

1. The tree's **behind** the blue car.
2. The bus stop is __________ the seat.
3. The blue car is __________ the tree.
4. The boy's standing __________ dad.
5. The green car's __________ the bus stop.
6. The bus stop is __________ the green car and the seat.
7. The seat is __________ the garage.
8. The postman's __________ dad.

**6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.**

1. What's opposite the building where you live? ____________________________________________
2. What's behind your building? ________________________________________________________
3. What's next to it? ___________________________________________________________________
4. Are there any shops near it? _________________________________________________________
5. What's above your living room? ______________________________________________________
6. What's below your bedroom? ___________________________________________________________________

**7 Test yourself. Cover the sentences and look at the picture.**

What can you say about ... the people? the postman? the office? the garage? the seat? the bus stop?
C Prepositions of movement

Circle the correct word.

1. Don’t run down the ________
2. Walk under the ________
3. Don’t go across the ________
4. Go into the ________
5. Walk through the ________
6. I ran past the ________
7. Go up the ________
8. Don’t run down the ________
9. Walk out of the ________
10. We flew over the ________

Complete 1–10 with a preposition in each sentence.

1. We shouted hello as the boat went ________ the bridge.
2. She went ________ the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
3. They drove ________ the hill to look at the view from the top.
4. We walked ________ the river for about thirty minutes, then walked back.
5. We drove ________ a restaurant on the way to the station.
6. He came ________ the door and fell over; it was very funny.
7. I came ________ the bank and saw the accident.
8. We went ________ the hill, into the valley below.
9. The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens and he just ran ________ the road.
10. We swam ________ the bridge, so they couldn’t see us.

Test yourself. Cover the words and look at the pictures. Can you remember the prepositions?
I can use link words (1)

A And, also, too, as well  

The city centre is dirty **and** very noisy.  

**And** links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The centre is dirty.</th>
<th>The centre is dirty.</th>
<th>The centre is dirty.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>and it's <strong>also</strong> very expensive.</td>
<td>and it <em>also</em> costs a lot to live there.</td>
<td>and it's very expensive and it costs a lot to live there <strong>too.</strong> as well.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Also** goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. be, can, but before the main verb.  

**Too** and **as well** go at the end of the sentence.  

**Too** and **as well** are more informal than **also.**

---

1. **Are also, too or as well** in the correct positions? Put a tick (√) or a cross (✗).
   - You need a dictionary, and **as well** a grammar book is useful.    **✗**  
   1. The house is beautiful, and it's near the park also.    __________  
   2. He speaks German, and he understands too Greek.    __________  
   3. We went out for dinner and **Lucy** came as well.    __________  
   4. I cleaned the house and washed **also** the car.    __________  
   5. She worked in Rome, and I think she worked in Ravenna too.    __________  
   6. We've got a big garden and **as well** a park near the house.    __________

2. **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

   - **too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter**   
     The weather's **nice in autumn** and it's **good in winter too.**   
   1. **yoghurt / also / like / and I**  
     I often eat ice cream __________   
   2. **but I go / too / watching TV / to the cinema a lot**  
     I enjoy __________   
   3. **German / as well / understand / I can / and**  
     I **can speak English** __________   
   4. **also / but I / music / of books / listen to**  
     I **read a lot** __________   
   5. **and / on TV / I watch it / as well / football**  
     I **play** __________

3. **ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? Write true or false.**  
   - The weather's **nice in autumn** and it's **good in winter too.**    **false**
B  Reason and result

I went into the café because it was raining.
I went into the café because of the rain.

because (of) comes before the reason
because + clause
because of + noun

I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain.
= I went in the café because it was raining.
(in order) to comes before the reason
(in order) to + verb

It was raining, so I went into the café.
= I went in the café because it was raining.
so comes before the result
so + clause
There is usually a comma (,) before so.

4 Circle the correct word.

I took my umbrella because so it was raining.
1 I stayed at home because/because of the weather.
2 We went to Paris so/to see a friend.
3 I couldn’t go out because/because of I had to study.
4 It was my birthday, so/because we had a party.
5 She went to the market to/because get a book.
6 She lost her passport, so/because she couldn’t go to China.

5 Write because, because of, so, or to.

The were late because of the traffic.
1 I’m going to the chemist’s get some aspirins.
2 It was a nice day, we went out.
3 I bought the house the beautiful view.
4 I don’t go to the theatre very often it’s too expensive.
5 I’m going out now, I’ll phone you tomorrow.
6 She went to the centre meet her friend.
7 I think he married her her money.
8 Are you studying English get a better job?
A When and if (future)

I’ll post the letter when I go out. (I’m sure I’m going out later.)
I’ll post the letter if I go out. (I’m not sure I’m going out later.)

OR

When I go out, I’ll post the letter.

The verb after when or if is usually in the present simple, not the will form.

NOT I’ll post the letter when I will go out.

1 Circle the correct answer.

- I’ll tell her if I see her. = I’m sure/not sure that I’ll see her.
  1 He’ll be OK when he sees her. = He’s sure/not sure that he’ll see her.
  2 If I go to Beijing, I’ll email you. = I’m sure/not sure that I’ll go to Beijing.
  3 I’ll ring you if I can come. = I’m sure/not sure that I can come.
  4 He’ll feel better when he gets home. = It’s sure/not sure that he’s going home.
  5 When we get on the train, we’ll ring you. = It’s sure/not sure that we’ll get on the train.
  6 You’ll find the museum if you take a map. = It’s sure/not sure that you’ll take a map.

2 Complete the sentences with if or when.

- If __________ you miss the seven o’clock train, you’ll have to walk.
  1 __________ it’s cold tonight, we’ll have soup.
  2 __________ I’m 30, I’ll have a party.
  3 I’ll call you __________ you forget to ring me.
  4 We’ll leave __________ it stops raining.
  5 He’ll do it __________ he wakes up tomorrow.
  6 __________ you lose your key, you can phone me.

B When and while

When and while both mean ‘in that period of time’.

I phoned the doctor when I was on holiday.

- = in a period when I was on holiday

past

on holiday (a period of time)

When (but not while) also means ‘at that moment’ or ‘at that time’.

I gave Jack the money when he got home.

- = at the time I met him

past
gave him the money

Jack got home
3 Circle the correct answer. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- The lesson started when/while the students sat down.

1 Come and see me while/when you arrive.
2 I’ll help with the children when/while you get home.
3 She saw the accident while/when she was shopping.
4 She met Mr Jacks while/when she got to the station.
5 I’ll wash the car when/while you’re at work.
6 Shall we go out when/while it stops raining?

## C A sequence of actions

... and we had a really nice week. Firstly, we spent a few days in Budapest, then we went to Vienna. Afterwards, we went on a tour of the Lakes and stayed in Salzburg for a couple of nights.

... it’s very easy to make. First of all, you fry the meat, and then you fry some onions and add them to the meat. After that, you add some red wine and water and cook slowly for three hours. Finally, you add some red pepper and cook it for fifteen minutes.

## 4 Complete the texts with link words. Don’t use the same word twice.

### A
For this job, firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1) ________ you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) ________, you meet other people who work in the company. (3) ________, you have to do a written test.

### B
(4) ________, I checked the train times on the internet, and (5) ________ I looked at the flights to see if they were cheaper.

## 5 Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.

- I checked the answers. / I did all the grammar exercises.
  
  First of all, I did all the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

1 She made the pasta sauce. / She boiled the pasta. / She added the sauce to the pasta.

2 I did a Masters degree. / I did a degree in history. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a few days. / We started our holiday in Heidelberg.

4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.

## 6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.

- First of all, I
I can use ‘have’ and ‘have got’

A Have and have got

| My brother has/has got a house in the country.     | If you have/have got something, it is yours: it belongs to you.          |
| She has/has got a bad cold at the moment.         | Use have/have got to describe illness.                                   |
| They have/’ve got two young daughters.            | Use have/have got to describe relationships.                            |
| Both girls have/have got blonde hair.             | Use have/have got to describe appearance.                               |

spotlight have and have got

Have is a full verb. Use do, does and did in questions, short answers and negatives.

Do they have a car? ~ Yes, they do. I didn’t have a job last year.

In negatives and questions, have got is more common than have with do. We don’t use have got in short answers. Have they got a car? He hasn’t got a bike. He doesn’t have a bike. (less common)

1 Change have to the correct form of have got in each sentence.

1. I have an old car.  I’ve got an old car.  
2. She has blue eyes.  
3. They have a small dog.  
4. I don’t have a mobile phone.  
5. He doesn’t have any money.  
6. Do you have any sisters?  
7. Does she have a flat in town?  

2 Correct the mistakes.

1. He have a car.  He’s got a car.  or He has a car.  
2. She got any children?  
3. They has got a lovely garden.  
4. Have she got long hair?  
5. My sister no have a boyfriend.  
6. Have you a computer?  
7. We don’t got any friends here.  

3 Complete the questions.

1. Have you got a car?  
2. Have you got a bike?  
3. Have you got a computer?  
4. Have your parents got a dog?  
5. Have you got an English dictionary?  

ABOUT YOU

If so, what kind?  
If so, when do you use it?  
If so, what kind?  
If so, what’s its name?  
If so, what’s it called?  

5. Have you any English-speaking friends?  If so, who are they?  

ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.
### B Have + noun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have breakfast/lunch/dinner</th>
<th>not the breakfast/the lunch/the dinner</th>
<th>We had lunch in a pizzeria.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have a wash/a shower/a bath</td>
<td>I had a quick shower before I left.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a drink/something to eat</td>
<td>I had a drink with Joe last night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a swim/a walk/a run activities you do because</td>
<td>I didn't have a run this morning.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day</td>
<td>We had a nice walk yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey</td>
<td>Have a nice weekend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a break = stop work for a short period and relax</td>
<td>Let's have a break for ten minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have a rest = relax and do nothing</td>
<td>I'm going to have a rest this weekend.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can't use have got in these expressions. Not: let's have a break.

### 5 Make four more groups of phrases with have from the words below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>swim</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>break</th>
<th>bath</th>
<th>journey</th>
<th>rest</th>
<th>lunch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shower</td>
<td>weekend</td>
<td>break ✓</td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>run</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6 Complete the postcard.

Dear Carla

We're having a great **time** here in Parati. Yesterday we had a **break** round the town and bought a few things. In the evening we had a **dinner** in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had a **break** in a nice fish restaurant. We're going to have a **break** in the sea this morning, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a **break** after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a **break** back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you soon.

Love, Nicky

### 7 Complete the sentences.

1. I got up late and didn't have any **breakfast**.
2. Would you like to have something to ____________?
3. I worked hard today, so I'm going to have a ____________ this evening.
4. We have a twenty-minute ____________ between the lessons.
5. All the buses were late this morning, so I had a bad ____________ to work.
6. Did you have a good ____________ in London yesterday?
7. Have a nice ____________ to work. See you on Monday.
8. They had a fantastic ____________ in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
9. I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a ____________.
Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of get. You will complete column 3 in Exercise 2.

1. He becomes angry if you're late. **He gets angry if you're late.**
2. Did you receive my message?
3. I must buy some new clothes.
4. We arrived home late last night.
5. It's becoming cold.
6. I received three letters today.
7. Where did you buy that bag?
8. He needs to obtain a job.
9. Do you want to travel by train?

Cover sentences 1 – 8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does get mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

He gets angry if you're late.  become

Complete the sentences in a logical way, using get.

1. Do you want to walk or ________________?
2. What time did you ________________?
3. Those shoes are lovely. Where did you ________________?
4. Could you close the window? It's ________________.
5. I must go now, it's ________________.
6. She sent me an email but I didn't ________________.
7. I need a map of the town centre. Where can I ________________?
8. I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to ________________.
Review: Language

Unit 70

1 Describe each picture with an adjective.

weak  1  2  3  4  5

2 Complete the crossword. The letters in grey spell out another word. What is it?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>O</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- There is no other. only
  - Giving help. ________
  - Opposite of unusual. ________
  - Opposite of useful. ________
  - Synonym of odd. ________
  - Opposite of quiet. ________
  - Not important; you don’t need it. ________
  - Opposite of confusing. ________
  - Synonym of irritating. ________

Unit 71

1 Add one word from the box to the correct place in each sentence.

even  absolutely  still  quite
only  especially  a bit

- I play tennis a lot, in the summer.
  - I go swimming, even in ________.
- We couldn’t play the match with ten players.
  - It was August, but the weather was really ________.
- He lives in Italy, but speaks English most of the time.
  - The service is a bit ________, but the food is really good.
- The food is fantastic in that restaurant.
  - She can’t drive; she’s only ________.
- Max didn’t like the film, but I thought it was good.
  - By the end of the evening I was quite ________.
- The last film was good, but this is better.
  - I like her new boyfriend; he’s extremely ________.
- My English is getting better. ________

2 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- There are too many cars on the roads, but I still ________ to work.
  - I go swimming, even in ________.
- It was August, but the weather was really ________.
- The service is a bit ________, but the food is really good.
- She can’t drive; she’s only ________.
- By the end of the evening I was quite ________.
- I like her new boyfriend; he’s extremely ________.
Unit 72

Complete the crossword.

Across →
3 She hasn’t ______ to the dentist for a year.
4 Have you ______ that book?
6 They ______ the bus to work this morning.
9 I ______ the books on the shelf.
11 I ______ these keys on the floor. Are they yours?
13 He ______ for eight hours last night.
14 I ______ her an email yesterday.
15 He ______ to post the letter.

Down ↓
1 We ______ to the cinema on Saturday.
2 Have you ______ his new film?
3 She ______ some new jeans at the weekend.
5 Have you ______ your homework?
7 How long have you ______ her?
8 He ______ ten kilometres this morning.
10 I ______ the book was very good.
12 She ______ home at 8 o’clock this morning.
13 We ______ on the floor because there were no chairs.
14 I ______ all my money on holiday.

Unit 73

1 Make sentences from the words.
   1 morning / I / woke / this / early / up ______
   2 you / down / why / sit / don’t / ? ______
   3 find / I / address / out / must / their ______
   4 over / street / the / fell / in / she ______
   5 night / you / out / last / did / go / ? ______
   6 light / on / could / the / you / turn / ? ______
   7 look / in / up / dictionary / it / your ______
   8 them / I / try / could / on / ? ______
2 Change the underlined words for a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

- Can I remove my jacket? **take off**
- I **stopped** smoking last year.
- The price of flats is **increasing** all the time.
- She lives in Paris but wants to **return** to Rome.
- The plane couldn’t **leave the ground and start flying**.
- We have a good relationship.
- When I finish this I can **continue** with Exercise 2.

Unit 74

Put the words and phrases in the correct place in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the morning</th>
<th>Monday morning</th>
<th>December</th>
<th>my birthday</th>
<th>breakfast</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>midnight</td>
<td>the sixth of March</td>
<td>half past five</td>
<td>the afternoon</td>
<td>Friday evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summer</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>three o’clock</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>the weekend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In</th>
<th>At</th>
<th>On</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the morning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 75

1 Read the text, then complete the sentences.

Seven years ago I left California and went to live in Spain. I already spoke Spanish very well, and I got a job as a receptionist in a tourist hotel near Malaga. I stayed in one of the rooms and looked for somewhere to live. I found a nice apartment near the town and I worked at the hotel for two years. After that I got a similar job, this time in a large hotel on the Algarve in the south of Portugal. I met a Spanish man at the hotel - he also worked there - and six months later we got married. We bought a small house near the hotel and one month ago, I found out that we’re going to have a baby. We are now preparing a room for him - or her.

- I already spoke Spanish before I **went to live in Spain**.
- I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until **____________________________**.
- I met a Spanish man after I **____________________________**.
- I’ve lived in the house I bought since I **____________________________**.
- I’ve lived in Portugal for **____________________________**.
- Soon I’m going to **____________________________**.
- At the moment we’re **____________________________**.
2 Put the phrases in the correct place on the line.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>last night</td>
<td>tomorrow evening</td>
<td>today</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday afternoon</td>
<td>this evening</td>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last week</td>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
<td>next Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in ten days’ time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 76

1 Put the letters in order to make prepositions.

- wolbe ___________ 5 wodn ___________ 10 sotipepo ___________
- revo ___________ 6 scoras ___________ 11 tebnewe ___________
- stap ___________ 7 tenx ot ___________ 12 gorhhtu ___________
- rean ___________ 8 toin ___________
- beavo ___________ 9 tou fo ___________

2 Which words from Exercise 1 can go in sentences 1 and 2 below?

1. I live ___________ Jack.
2. Jo ran ___________ the park.

3 Write the words in the correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In</th>
<th>At</th>
<th>On</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the world</td>
<td>school</td>
<td>the world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the coast</td>
<td>a football match</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the table</td>
<td>the wall</td>
<td>the countryside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my town</td>
<td>home</td>
<td>the second floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the wall</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>the bedroom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 77

1 Match 1 – 8 with a – i.

- We went to Rio last year because ___________  a. we loved the street life too.
- We decided to go in September because of ___________  b. I think we’ll go back next year.
- My mother decided to come and ___________  c. we wanted to visit some friends.
- Our Brazilian friends weren’t working, so ___________  d. see the countryside.
- They came to the airport to ___________  e. we spent a lot of time together.
- We had a week in Rio, and ___________  f. we went to São Paolo as well.
- We drove to São Paolo in order to ___________  g. the weather; it’s cooler then.
- The food was great, and ___________  h. meet us.
- There are still many things to see, so ___________  i. we also took her sister.
2 Complete the text with a link word/phrase from the box.

because too as well because of also to so

My cousin, Peter, did French at university, and he studied a little Chinese too. He first became interested in the language because of his girlfriend, Hua. She’s half Chinese, but she has lived in Britain for most of her life. Peter moved to Beijing two years ago to study Chinese. Hua went there last year and got a job in a bank, and he also got a job, teaching English. They loved living there when the people were so friendly and life was great. Last month, Hua found a new job in Hong Kong, and then Peter decided to leave China and go there too. He’s sad about leaving China, but I’m sure he’ll go back and see his friends in the future.

Unit 78

1 Write sentences using phrases from each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If</th>
<th>When</th>
<th>While</th>
<th>you get to the airport, ✓</th>
<th>tell the airline staff.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you’re travelling on a long flight, ✓</td>
<td>go to the embassy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you can choose your seat on the plane, ✓</td>
<td>sit near the front where it’s quiet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you are waiting for the flight, ✓</td>
<td>sit in the departure lounge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you get off, ✓</td>
<td>don’t leave anything on the plane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you feel ill during the flight, ✓</td>
<td>always wear comfortable clothes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you lose your passport on holiday, ✓</td>
<td>go to the check-in desk. ✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When you get to the airport, go to the check-in desk.

1
2
3
4
5
6

2 Complete the text with words from the box.

after that first of all finally while if then when ✓

When I’m getting ready to go out for the evening, (1) after that I have a shower. And (2) finally, I’m in the shower, I often listen to music and sing along; oh, yes, and I wash my hair, too. (3) while I have a shave and put on some expensive aftershave. (My girlfriend really loves that!) (4) if I decide what to wear: usually a shirt and some casual trousers. And then (5) when I look in the mirror before I go out to see if everything’s OK. I want to look my best!
Unit 79

1 Circle the correct word or phrase.
   - What time do you have**lunch**/a lunch?
   1 Did you have/had a wash before dinner?
   2 We always have a/the swim in the lake in the afternoon.
   3 **Have you got**/Did you have a good weekend?
   4 Do/Have you got any children?
   5 We **hadn’t**/didn’t have the same office last year.
   6 We had a great time/weather in Italy last summer.
   7 Can I have rest/a rest? I’m really tired.
   8 I had/was hungry, so I had/had got dinner.

2 One word is missing. Where from? Write it at the end of the sentence.
   - It was sunny at midday, so we had ___ in the garden. **lunch**
   1 We had a for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
   2 We had something eat at the beach.
   3 My sister got blonde hair.
   4 I was hot, so I had a before dinner.
   5 We had a day at work. I hate my job!
   6 Have a lovely in the Caribbean!
   7 I’d like to go on holiday, but I don’t any money.
   8 On Sunday, we just had a and did nothing.

Unit 80

1 What meaning does the verb get have in each sentence? Write the number of the sentence next to the correct verb.

   - Where do you get your fruit and vegetables?
   2 Are you trying to get a new job?
   3 Do you get tired in hot weather?
   4 How many text messages do you get every day?
   5 Are you getting taller?
   6 What did you get for your last birthday?
   7 Where did you get the shoes you’re wearing?
   8 How often do you get the train to school or work?
   9 What time did you get home last night?

2 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 1, or ask another student.
## Vocabulary building

All the words in **bold** are in the units.

### 1 Verbs and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>actor, actress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertise</td>
<td>advert/advertisement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agree</td>
<td>agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apologize</td>
<td>apology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td>arrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach</td>
<td>attachment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>beginning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>belief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>building, builder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>climb</td>
<td>climbing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect</td>
<td>collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compose</td>
<td>composer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>dance, dancing, dancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deliver</td>
<td>delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>depart</td>
<td>departure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>designer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disagree</td>
<td>disagreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drawing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>driver, driving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td>education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enter</td>
<td>entrance, entry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>examine</td>
<td>explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explain</td>
<td>fail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fail</td>
<td>failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>feeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flight, flying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>growth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate</td>
<td>hatred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insure</td>
<td>insurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>invitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td>manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>own</td>
<td>owner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>park</td>
<td>parking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perform</td>
<td>performance, performer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permit</td>
<td>permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>preference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>print</td>
<td>printer, printout, printing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronounce</td>
<td>pronunciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>reading, reader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recommend</td>
<td>recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>refusal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report</td>
<td>report, reporter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reserve</td>
<td>reservation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respond</td>
<td>response</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>riding, rider</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>run, runner, running</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serve</td>
<td>service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shooting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sign</td>
<td>signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>singer, singing, song</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoke</td>
<td>smoke, smoking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study</td>
<td>study, student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>suggestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swim, swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>teacher, teaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thinking, thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
<td>travelling, travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>walk, walking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash</td>
<td>wash, washing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weigh</td>
<td>weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>winner</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Test yourself. Cover one column and look at the other. Can you remember the other part of speech?
## 2 Adjectives and nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>anger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able, unable</td>
<td>ability, inability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attractive</td>
<td>attraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloudy</td>
<td>cloud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable,</td>
<td>comfort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncomfortable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crowded</td>
<td>crowd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>danger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dirty</td>
<td>dirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electric, electrical</td>
<td>electricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excited, exciting</td>
<td>excitement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famous</td>
<td>fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foggy</td>
<td>fog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendly, unfriendly</td>
<td>friendship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographical</td>
<td>geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky, unlucky</td>
<td>luck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy, unhappy</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>healthy, unhealthy</td>
<td>health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>historic, historical</td>
<td>history</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humid</td>
<td>humidity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>hunger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>icy</td>
<td>ice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ill</td>
<td>illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industrial</td>
<td>industry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intelligent</td>
<td>intelligence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind, unkind</td>
<td>kindness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>laziness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
<td>length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mad</td>
<td>madness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medical</td>
<td>medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musical</td>
<td>music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistaken</td>
<td>mistake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noisy</td>
<td>noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>northern</td>
<td>north</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible, impossible</td>
<td>possibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>painful</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peaceful</td>
<td>peace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>personal</td>
<td>person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political</td>
<td>politics, politician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>religious</td>
<td>religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sad</td>
<td>sadness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sale</td>
<td>safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientific</td>
<td>science, scientist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>southern</td>
<td>south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>sun, sunshine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>truth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>various</td>
<td>variety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>violent</td>
<td>violence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td>weakness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>western</td>
<td>west</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td>width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>windy</td>
<td>wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wooden</td>
<td>wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>youth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>cough</td>
<td>jump</td>
<td>label</td>
<td>post</td>
<td>shave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>pull</td>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>push</td>
<td>snow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>delay</td>
<td>queue</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cash</td>
<td>divorce</td>
<td>repair</td>
<td>matter</td>
<td>repair</td>
<td>stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>download</td>
<td>reply</td>
<td>microwave</td>
<td>research</td>
<td>taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>drink</td>
<td>request</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat</td>
<td>email</td>
<td>tour</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>tour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>use</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>share</td>
<td>visit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
circle    | guide    | visit     | phone    | waste     | work     |

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>confusion</td>
<td>confuse</td>
<td>confusing, confused</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>death</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>dead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employment</td>
<td>employ</td>
<td>employed, unemployed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoyment</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoyable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>excitement</td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>exciting, excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>help</td>
<td>helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heating</td>
<td>heat</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest</td>
<td>interest</td>
<td>interested, interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>known, unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location</td>
<td>locate</td>
<td>located</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marriage</td>
<td>marry/get married</td>
<td>married</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organization</td>
<td>organize</td>
<td>organized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>pollute</td>
<td>polluted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rent</td>
<td>rent</td>
<td>rented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retirement</td>
<td>retire</td>
<td>retired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speech</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprise</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>surprise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>write</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>worry</td>
<td>worried, worrying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Verbs and adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>annoy</td>
<td>annoyed, annoying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boil</td>
<td>boiled, boiling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bore</td>
<td>bored, boring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>closed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete</td>
<td>complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>correct</td>
<td>correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>frozen, freezing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frighten</td>
<td>frightened, frightening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>included</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irritate</td>
<td>irritated, irritating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relax</td>
<td>relaxed, relaxing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tidy</td>
<td>tidy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire</td>
<td>tired, tiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake up</td>
<td>awake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Common irregular verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overtake</td>
<td>overtook</td>
<td>overtaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>shook</td>
<td>shaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
<td>spelt/spelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake (up)</td>
<td>woke (up)</td>
<td>woken (up)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Answer key
Answer key

Unit 1

1 1 two hundred
2 three hundred and forty
3 twenty-two
4 42,500
5 one thousand two hundred
6 two thousand three hundred and fifty

2 1 eight
2 twenty
3 sixty-seven
4 fifty
5 a/one hundred and nineteen
6 two hundred and forty-four
7 a/one thousand
8 five thousand and fifty-six
9 eleven thousand three hundred and one

2 1 about a/one hundred euros
2 about ten students
3 about thirty years
4 about five hundred
5 about two thousand
6 about eighty people
7 about two hundred and fifty thousand
8 about a/one million

Unit 2

1 1 nine fifteen
2 ten twenty-five
3 three thirty-five
4 eleven forty-five
5 quarter past seven
6 half past nine
7 three minutes past one
8 seventeen minutes past four

4 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S 8 S

5 Answers from a British person
1 They open at nine a.m.
2 No, they don’t.
3 They close at half past five in the afternoon, and at seven p.m. on Thursdays.
4 They open at about eleven in the morning.
5 They close at different times. Some close at about midnight.
6 They open at nine a.m. and close at half past five in the afternoon.

Unit 3

1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December

2 1 Tuesday
2 September
3 summer
4 December
5 Saturday
6 two thousand and forty-four

3 Answers from a British person
1 September.
2 I like spring because it’s light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it’s nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family and we have a big lunch together.
5 May 1st is a public holiday for workers, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.

5 1 third
2 twentieth
3 fifth
4 first
5 eighth

6 1 April the tenth.
2 April the eleventh.
3 March the fourth.
4 April the sixth.
5 April the seventeenth.
6 March the thirty-first.

7 1 The third of February.
2 July the fourth.
3 The tenth of December.
4 August the twelfth.
5 The fifteenth of January.
6 Nineteen eighty-nine.
7 The twenty-first of May.
8 November the thirtieth. or The thirtieth of November.
9 The twenty-second of April. or April the twenty-second.
10 Twenty fifteen. or Two thousand and fifteen.
11 Your own answer
12 Your own answer

Unit 4
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 F
2 1 Britain 6 Africa
2 Europe 7 The Middle East
3 Central 8 Asia
4 Far 9 Australasia
5 South

3 1 France, French
2 Germany, German
3 Spain, Spanish
4 Portugal, Portuguese
5 Italy, Italian
6 The Czech Republic, Czech
7 Poland, Polish
8 Hungary, Hungarian
9 Russia, Russian
10 Greece, Greek
11 Turkey, Turkish
4 -ian: Russian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Brazilian, Argentinian, Indian, Canadian, Australian
-ish: British, Spanish, Turkish, Polish, English
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican

Unit 5
1 1 X 2 ✓ 3 X 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 ✓ 10 ✓ 11 X 12 ✓
2 1 board pen 4 pencil sharpener
2 cassette player 5 piece of paper
3 noticeboard 6 CD player
3 Answers from an Argentinian person
I've got a rubber. I haven't got a rubber.
I've got a desk. I haven't got a desk.
I've got a table. I haven't got a table.
I've got a chair. I haven't got a chair.

Unit 6
1 1 indefinite 5 past participle
2 noun 6 plural
3 preposition 7 verbs
4 an irregular 8 adverbs

2 1 I 7 Today/quickly
2 lessons 8 asked
3 young 9 spoke
4 a 10 class
5 from/in 11 I think he's in the wrong class.
6 the

Unit 7
1 1 f 2 g 3 a 4 d 5 b 6 e
2 1 called 5 right/correct
2 pronounce 6 opposite
3 How do 7 does
4 between 8 explain

Unit 8
1 1 What do you do in your country?
2 Where do you come from?
3 Could I have your address?
4 What's your family name?
5 What's your postcode?
6 How old are your children?
7 Have you got any children?
8 What's your first name?
2 1 family 5 could/can
2 first 6 postcode
3 from 7 do
4 Whereabouts/ 8 married
Where exactly? 9 old

3 Answers from a Greek person
1 Anna 5 11363
2 Greece 6 I'm a teacher.
3 Athens 7 No, I'm single.
4 1 Kipseli 8 I'm 30.
11363 Athens
Greece

Unit 9
1 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 F 10 F 11 F 12 T
2 Your own answers

Unit 10
1 1 daughter 6 husband
2 nephew 7 grandmother
3 niece 8 uncle
4 sister-in-law 9 aunt
5 cousin 10 relatives
2 1 sister 7 grandmother
2 wife 8 granddaughter
3 niece 9 cousin
4 relative 10 parent
5 daughter 11 aunt
6 sister-in-law

4 Your own answers
5 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 F 8 T 9 T

206 ANSWER KEY
1. I was born in 1989.
2. We spend a lot of time together.
3. My girlfriend is older than me.
4. There are six of us in my family.
5. I am the youngest in my family.
6. I've got an older/younger brother and a younger/older sister.

Answers from a Turkish person
1. There are six people in my family.
2. 1963.
3. I've got one sister and two brothers. My sister's older than me and my two brothers are younger than me.
4. I spend a lot of time with my sister because she's fun and she lives near me.
5. No. We all live in our own houses but very close to each other.

Unit 11
1. lie down 5. sit down
2. fall over 6. get on
3. ride 7. run
4. climb 8. stand up
2. 1. stand 6. jumped
2. walk 7. rode
3. climb 8. ran, fell
4. dance 9. got, got
5. lie

4. 1. carry 5. touch 9. hold
2. turn off 6. drop 10. push
3. put down 7. pick up 11. shut
4. close 8. break 12. open
5. 1. touch a bicycle 1, push a bicycle 2
2. pick up a TV 2, turn on a TV 1
3. break a bottle 1, open a bottle 2
4. pull your hair 1, touch your hair 1
5. turn off a radio 1, hold a radio 1
6. drop a ruler 1, break a ruler 2
7. carry a door 2, close a door 1
8. pick up a baby 2, hold a baby 2

Unit 12
1. 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 T 9 T
10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F
2. 1. wrist 5. shoulder
2. stomach 6. eyes
3. neck 7. bottom
4. finger
3. 1. chin 6. face
2. stomach 7. nose
3. chest 8. bottom
4. tooth/teeth 9. waist
5. back

Unit 13
1. 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 F
2. 1. height 4. weighs
2. good-looking 5. fat
3. slim 6. beautiful
4. 1. I've got medium-length, short, curly hair. OR I've got medium-length, short, curly hair.
2. Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy. OR Her hair is short, blonde, light brown, and wavy.
3. My sister's hair is short, long, and curly. OR My sister's hair is short, long, and curly.
4. My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache. OR My brother's got short, grey, black hair, and a moustache.
5. My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair. OR My father's got a beard and long, wavy, straight hair.

6. Answers from a German person
1. It's short.
2. It's red.
3. It's straight.
4. I've got a beard.
5. No, my eyes are blue.

7. 1 b 2 e 3 i 4 h 5 c 6 f 7 a 8 g

8. Answers from an Argentinian person
1. Pablo (my nephew).
2. Ester (my mother).
3. Ezequiel (my nephew).
4. Berta (my grandmother).
5. Pedro (my father).
7. Carlos (my mother's 5th husband).
10. The police are looking for Y.
11. The other man is in his mid-forties/is middle-aged, short and overweight, with short grey hair and a beard.

Unit 14
1. 1. funny 5. clever
2. quiet 6. friendly
3. relaxed 7. laugh
4. nice
2. 1. unfriendly 5. funny
2. intelligent 6. serious
3. horrible 7. relaxed
4. stupid 8. kind
3 1 serious
    2 are, fun, horrible/unfriendly
    3 What, kind, clever/intelligent
4 really friendly, really nice, really funny, really interesting
5 T 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F

6 Answers from a British person
   1 I'm very sporty.
   2 I don't think I'm very relaxed.
   3 I'm tidy at work but untidy at home.
   4 I'm hardworking most of the time.
   5 I'm quiet but I think I'm quite sociable as well.
   6 Yes, I think I am.

Unit 15
1 1 They had a baby last year.
   2 They split up in January.
   3 We have a very good relationship.
   4 How did you get to know her?
   5 They were together for three years.
   6 I went out with him for six months.
2 1 have 5 ex-
   2 together 6 divorced, partner/
   3 couple girlfriend, get
   4 out, up
3 T 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S
4 Answers from an Hungarian person
   1 My wife.
   2 Seven years.
   3 At a friend's Christmas party.
   4 We have mutual friends.
   5 We live together.
   6 Because we love each other. We're interested in similar things, and we want the same things in life.

Unit 16
1 1 I'm tired.
   2 I'm nervous.
   3 I'm thirsty.
   4 I'm hungry.
   5 I'm boiling.
   6 I'm ill or I feel ill.
   7 or I don't feel well.
2 1 matter; feel or 'm
   2 tired
   3 matter; freezing
   4 angry
   5 worried
   6 upset
   7 scared
   8 surprised
   9 love
3 1 angry
   2 surprised
   3 worried
   4 excited
   5 embarrassed
   6 happy
   7 upset or sad or unhappy
   8 frightened or scared
   9 love

Unit 17
1 1 I get dressed before breakfast.
   2 I have breakfast at 8 a.m.
   3 I leave home at 8.30 a.m.
   4 I finish work at 6 p.m.
   5 I have dinner with my family.
   6 I go to bed at 11 o'clock.
   7 I sleep seven hours a night.
2 1 get 4 get
   2 have 5 have
   3 leave 6 go
3 Answers from a Japanese person
   1 I get dressed before breakfast.
   2 Yes, I do sometimes.
   3 In the sitting room.
   4 At about 8.15.
   5 At about 8.50.
   6 My family.
   7 At around 11.30.
   8 About 8 hours.
5 do the shopping once or twice a week
   stay in
   play tennis go to the gym
   come round at the weekend
   go for a walk
6 1 go 6 late
   2 round 7 at
   3 play 8 gym
   4 out or shopping 9 do, early
   5 During, in 10 see
7 T 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D
8 1 Haruko gets up early every day.
   2 Hiro hardly ever goes to the gym.
   3 Haruko always stays in.
   4 Hiro studies all day.
   5 Haruko never has a shower in the morning.
   6 Hiro occasionally goes to the cinema.
9 Answers from a British person
   1 True. I always have a shower before breakfast.
   2 False. I occasionally go out on Friday evening.
   3 False. I sometimes watch music in the evening.
   4 False. I often study on Sunday.
   5 False. I play TV at the weekend.
   6 False. I sometimes watch TV in the evening.
   7 True. I usually go shopping on Monday.
   8 False. I never go to the gym after dinner.
Unit 18

1 1 jacket 6 T-shirt
2 trousers 7 dress
3 jumper 8 jeans
4 coat 9 sweater
5 raincoat

3 1F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 T 8 F
9 T 10 F 11 T 12 F

5 1 gloves 4 sandals
2 umbrella 5 hat
3 jeans 6 jeans

6 1 Give me the sock.
2 Not possible.
3 I've got one pair of sandals.
4 Not possible.
5 She's wearing my scarf.
6 Where is my glove?
7 Not possible.
8 Not possible.

7 Answers from a German person
1 Light grey jeans, a blue T-shirt and black shoes.
2 I normally wear casual clothes at the weekend.
3 No, I only wear leather shoes.
4 I wear sunglasses in summer.
5 I wear a hat and a scarf in winter when it's cold. I wear a watch daily.

Unit 19

1 1 short 5 loose
2 comfortable 6 expensive
3 small 7 smart
4 casual 8 long
2 1 uncomfortable 5 small
2 nice 6 long
3 casual 7 loose
4 expensive 8 lovely
3 1 short 5 loose
2 uncomfortable 6 horrible/awful/
3 casual terrible
4 expensive
5 1 a or a size 4 fit, too
2 medium 5 take
3 wrong 6 fit, too

6 1 The shirt is too small/tight.
2 The trousers are too long.
3 The hat's too big.

7 1 Where do I pay?
2 No thanks, I'll leave it.
3 Excuse me, where's the changing room?
4 Can I try this dress on?
5 I'm looking for a pair of trousers.
6 Do you need any help?

Unit 20

1 1 The dictionary cost me eight euros and fifty.
2 Could you put in your PIN, please? or Could you enter your PIN, please?
3 She paid for the dress in cash.
4 I've only got a 50 pound note.
5 They're €6 for each.
6 Have you got a bank account?
7 Three books. That's €42 altogether.
8 The pen cost £3.20. I gave the shop assistant £5 and she gave me £1.80 change.
2 1 put in/enter 5 each
2 PIN 6 altogether
3 receipt 7 note
4 cost 8 change
3 1 price 5 fare
2 spend 6 earn
3 saved 7 sold
4 won 8 bill
4 1 bought 4 earned
2 spent 5 won
3 sold 6 saved
5 1 online 4 price
2 bill 5 fares
3 free 6 earn
6 Answers from a Greek person
1 Very rarely.
2 Yes it is. I really like talking on the phone.
3 Yes, most of the time it is.
4 It's about one euro.
5 Yes, they're cheap.
6 No, women earn less than men.

Unit 21

1 1c 2 i 3 h 4 j 5 b 6 a 7 e 8 f 9 g
2 1 rain 4 foggy
2 sunny 5 wind
3 snows 6 cloudy
4 1 showers 4 minutes
2 lightning 5 damp
3 dry, very hot 6 breeze

5 1 There was heavy rain last night.
2 It was humid yesterday.
3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
4 The weather's changeable.
5 It's dry today.
6 We had a storm.

6 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 We have a lot of showers in the winter.
2 In winter it's not always freezing at night.
3 The weather is the same all summer. True.
4 Once or twice a year we have heavy rain for 24 hours.
5 It only snows in the west of the country.
6 Our winters are usually cold and wet.
7 We often have thunder and lightning. True.
8 It is usually hot and humid in summer.

Unit 22
1 hurt 7 flu
2 've got 8 Has
3 feel 9 've got
4 've got 10 Has
5 feel 11 's
6 hurts 12 haven't got
2 cough 5 stomach-ache
2 temperature 6 sick
3 hurt 7 flu
4 matter; well 8 throat
4 1 You should go to the chemist's.
2 Go and lie down for a while.
3 Go and see your GP doctor. OR Go and see your GP doctor.
4 Stay in bed and don't do anything.
5 Go to bed for a day or two days.
6 You should go and see your doctor.
7 You shouldn't don't go to work today.
8 Lie down for the a while.
5 Possible answers
1 You should go and lie down for a while.
2 You should go to the pharmacy.
3 You should stay in bed for a day or two.
4 You should go and lie down for a while.
5 You should go and see your GP.

Unit 23
1 cotton wool 4 antiseptic 7 cream
2 tissues 5 plasters 8 medicine
3 correct 6 pharmacist

2 1 a sore throat
2 take these tablets
3 for toothache, please
4 wool
5 some plasters, please
6 for your finger
7 this medicine – it's very good
8 tablet three times a day
9 cream
10 help you

Unit 24
1 1 Pork, because it's a meat.
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3 Tuna, because it's a fish.
4 Salmon, because it's a fish.
5 Cow, because it's only an animal.
2 1 beef 3 tuna 5 crab
2 pork 4 duck
3 1 pork 3 salmon 5 bacon
2 lamb 4 tuna 6 chicken

4 Your own answers

Unit 25
1 grapes, melon, lemon, avocado, strawberry, cherry, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple
2 1 sweet
2 bitter
3 red
4 green
5 small
6 good
7 sweet
8 big
4 1 carrot 5 beans
2 onion 6 courgette
3 pepper 7 tomato
4 cabbage 8 garlic
5 T 6 T 7 F
6 Your own answers

Unit 26
1 ✔ 7 ✔
2 ✔ 8 bread or some
3 butter or some bread
4 ✔ 9
5 cheese or some jam
6 ✔ 12 ✔
2 1 milk 7 butter
2 some cheese 8 rice
3 sugar 9 a large bar of chocolate
4 biscuits 10 noodles
5 some olive oil
6 six eggs

4 1T 2F 3F 4T 5F 6T 7F 8T 9F 10T

5 1 box 6 packet
2 jar 7 grams
3 bottle 8 packet
4 carton/bottle 9 litre/bottle/carton
5 kilo

7 1 got, many
2 much, else, that's

3 Could/Can, just
4 like, ripe

8 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any ham?
4 How much cheese would you like?
5 That's just over half a kilo.
6 How many oranges would you like?

Unit 27
1 1 roll, baguette, sandwich, toasted sandwich
cappuccino, tea, orange juice, espresso, black coffee
2 1 bread 6 couple
2 sandwich 7 white
3 chocolate 8 white
4 coffee 9 have
5 take away

3 1 I'd like two coffees, please.
2 To drink here or take away?
3 To drink here. And a toasted ham sandwich.
4 OK. It will be a couple of minutes.
5 Have a seat, please.

Unit 28
1 1 fork 9 wine
2 spoon 10 red
3 napkin 11 white
4 plate 12 salt
5 bowl 13 black pepper
6 bottle 14 bottles
7 mineral water 15 oil
8 glasses 16 vinegar

2 Answers from an Argentinian person
On restaurant tables in my country we usually or sometimes have salt, pepper, napkins, oil and vinegar.
We don't usually have a bottle of mineral water, a bowl or a glass of red wine.

4 1F 2T 3T 4F 5T 6F 7T 8T 9F 10T

5 1 cream 5 course
2 steak 6 sauce
3 salad 7 done
4 soup 8 boiled

6 Your own answers
8 1 some more 5 of course
2 to order 6 the
3 another 7 I'll
4 meal 8 certainly
9 1 have 6 dessert
2 how 7 'll
3 course 8 bill
4 sparkling 9 sure/certainly
5 some

Unit 29
1 1 How many stops is it to the railway station?
2 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
3 How long does it take to the railway station?
4 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
5 Where do I get off for the cinema?
6 Does the 24 go to the park?
7 How often does the 24 run?
8 Which is the last stop for the 16?

2 1 Five 5 At the next stop
2 The 16 or the 24 6 No, it doesn't
3 About ten 7 Every ten minutes
4 Yes, it does 8 The railway station

3 1 stop 6 timetable
2 next/second 7 run
3 last/final 8 runs
4 get off 9 every
5 goes/runs 10 takes

4 Answers from a British person
1 Yes, at the end of the road.
2 The 9 and the 15.
3 They run about every 15 minutes.
4 I don't get the bus very often, but I sometimes get it to the town centre.
5 Four.
6 Five to ten minutes.

Unit 30
1 1 a slow train 4 the 7 o'clock train
2 get off the train 5 a seat
3 catch a train 6 at a (railway) station
2 1 fare 5 last/next
2 carriage 6 waited/next
3 missed 7 timetable
4 get/take 8 journey

ANSWER KEY 211
3 1 advance 5 office
  2 return 6 train
  3 direct 7 seat
  4 London

4 1 change 5 to
  2 leaves 6 single
  3 platform 7 advance
  4 gets

5 Answers from a German person
  1 A month ago.
  2 I went to Berlin to see friends.
  3 I paid €75.50 for the ticket.
  4 Yes, I always do, because you get reduced
     prices.
  5 It was a direct journey from Hannover to
     Berlin.

Unit 31
1 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the bank?
  2 Go along here and turn left.
  3 Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
  4 It’s the third turning on the right.
  5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the
     bank?
  6 Turn left into Foster Road.

2 1 turning 5 going
  2 much 6 on
  3 left/right/corner 7 here
  4 me 8 way

3 1 get 2 straight 3 turning 4 left 5 much
  2
  1 Excuse 2 near 3 along 4 take 5 turning
  6 right 7 opposite 8 Thanks

3 1 way 2 Turn 3 Into 4 corner 5 right

Unit 32
1 1 station 5 crossing
  2 road 6 park
  3 camera 7 jam
  4 sign

2 1 station 6 speed
  2 main 7 roundabout
  3 sign 8 traffic
  4 park 9 pavement
  5 crossing 10 junction

4 1 motorway 4 speed limit
  2 rush hour 5 accident
  3 overtake 6 a quiet road

5 1 busy 3 far
  2 lane, overtake 4 take, drive

6 Answers from a Turkish person
  1 Three.
  2 120kph.
  3 Not speed cameras, but police radar.
  4 No. We drive on the right, the steering
     wheel is on the left.
  5 9 a.m. and 6 p.m.

Unit 33
1 1 f 2 h 3 j 4 c 5 b 6 e 7 i 8 g 9 a

2 1 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
  2 in/out
  3 do not disturb/ring bell
  4 parking/entry/exit/vacancies
  5 in/out
  6 do not disturb/ring bell
  7 declare

Unit 34
1 1 Porto Alegre 6 Colombia
  2 Brasilia 7 Rio de Janeiro
  3 Amazon 8 Mountain
  4 Pico da Neblina 9 inland
  5 Argentina 10 coast

2 Possible answers
  1 It’s the longest river in Brazil.
  2 It’s the highest mountain in Brazil.
  3 It’s the capital.
  4 It’s a town in the south.
  5 It has a border with the south of Brazil.
  6 It’s a famous city on the coast.

3 Answers from a Greek person
  1 Athens. It’s in the north/centre of Greece.
  2 Thessaloniki, Patras and Corinth.
  3 Yes, it has borders with Albania, FYROM
      (Former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia),
      Bulgaria and Turkey.
  6 The islands.
  7 The Parthenon and the ancient theatre of
     the Acropolis.

Unit 35
1 1 bridge 5 park
  2 square 6 mosque
  3 castle 7 building
  4 cathedral

2 1 temple 5 park
  2 bridge 6 statue, square
  3 market 7 castle, palace
  4 museum 8 place
4 Size: a small village, a large city, a medium-sized town
Location: on the coast, on the River Duero, south-west of the capital
Population: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
Interesting facts: famous for historic buildings, an industrial town

5 1 of 5 population
2 in 6 under
3 of 7 industrial
4 on 8 historic

6 Answer from a British person
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. The population is just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist place in England, with lots of historic buildings, including a famous abbey (like a cathedral) and many museums.

7 1 no 4 no 7 no
2 yes 5 yes
3 yes 6 yes

8 1 cosmopolitan 4 nightlife
2 dangerous 5 crowded/busy
3 do 6 polluted

9 Answers from a Hungarian person (who lives in Budapest)
1 It's pretty safe, although we had some riots recently, but these are very unusual.
2 It's a big city, and there's a lot to do: there are cinemas, restaurants, cafés, shopping centres, parks and museums - whatever you're interested in.
3 It's a very busy city. There are two million people living there, and thousands commute there for work.
4 There are many popular clubs, bars, all-night cafés, late cinemas, concerts and other cultural events.
5 Yes, it is.
6 Some people think it's noisy and dirty, but I love it because it's got everything.

Unit 36

1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T 7 F 8 F 9 T
2 1 valley, hill 5 own, dog, horse
2 grass 6 crops, grow
3 few trees 7 farmers

3 Answers from an Argentinian person
1 Neither, I live in the city centre.
2 Yes, there is a natural lake close to my home.
3 No, I can't.
4 Yes, they are on the pavement.
5 There is a football pitch.
6 No.
7 Wheat, soy and corn.
8 Yes, I know a few.

5 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 G 5 D 6 D 7 D 8 S

6 1 I often buy flowers.
2 I love the countryside.
3 I'm very healthy.
4 I see lots of birds in my area.
5 Our public transport is wonderful.
6 I'm often alone in the evening.
7 I eat fresh fruit every day.
8 I never feel lonely.

7 Answers from a Japanese person
1 False. I don't buy flowers.
2 True.
3 True.
4 True, but not the pretty ones. I only see pigeons and crows.
5 True.
6 False. My family is normally with me.
7 False. I only eat fresh fruit a few times a week.
8 True.

Unit 37

1 1 butcher’s 4 deli
2 baker’s 5 chemist’s
3 paper shop 6 newsagent’s

2 Possible answers
1 sandwiches, bread, coffee, cheese, ham
2 medicine, aspirins, soap, shampoo
3 fruit, vegetables, meat, fish, bread, books
4 newspapers, cigarettes, chocolates
5 bread, cakes
6 CDs, DVDs

4 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F

5 1 shopping 4 convenient
2 prefer 5 deliver
3 queue 6 get

6 Answers from a British person
1 We usually do the shopping on Saturday morning.
2 I prefer small shops, but I have to use the supermarket a lot.
3 Yes, often.
4 Yes, they are.
5 One or two of them deliver, but I always carry things home myself.
6 At the market.
Unit 38

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T 9 T
2 1 basement 6 garden
  2 block of flats 7 steps
  3 ground floor 8 neighbour
  4 front door 9 balcony
  5 stairs 10 town centre
4 study, view, modern, living room, toilet, kitchen, home, dining room, upstairs, bedroom, utility room, parking, bathroom
5 1 living 8 kitchen
  2 bathroom 9 study
  3 view 10 Upstairs
  4 garage 11 bedrooms
  5 garden 12 bathrooms
  6 outside 13 parking
  7 views 14 outside

6 Answers from a German person
1 I live in a flat.
2 On the first floor.
3 No.
4 I look into the courtyard.
5 No, but there are always free spaces.
6 I have a living room, a bedroom, a dining room, a guest room, a bathroom, a kitchen and a big hallway.

Unit 39

1 1 washing machine 7 frying pan
  2 dishwasher, sink 8 freezer
  3 saucers, cupboard 9 full
  4 shelf/shelves 10 microwave, hob
  5 bin 11 tap
  6 oven 12 saucepan

2 Answers from a Turkish person
My washing machine is in the bathroom.

4 1 shopping 6 puts
  2 put (everything) away 7 takes
  3 empty 8 cook
  4 clean 9 washing-up
  5 make 10 ironing

5 Answers from a Greek person
1 My partner.
2 I do.
3 I do.
4 I do.
5 My partner.
6 We both do.

Unit 40

1 1 mirror 4 bidet
  2 desk 5 wardrobe
  3 blanket 6 towel
2 1 bedside table 7 wardrobe
  2 mirror 8 bidet
  3 bath 9 blanket
  4 chest of drawers 10 sheet
  5 washbasin 11 towel
  6 toilet 12 shower

3 Answers from an Argentinian person
In my bedroom, there's a double bed, a bedside table, a chest of drawers, a chair and a wardrobe.
In my bathroom, there's a shower, a washbasin, a toilet, a long mirror and two towels.

5 1 do, brush 4 shave
  2 have 5 washes, shampoo
  3 puts on 6 tissues

6 1 a 2 a 3 – 4 a 5 – 6 an 7 – 8 a, –

7 Your own answers

Unit 41

1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T 9 T 10 T 11 T 12 F 13 T 14 F
2 1 floor 7 bookshelves
  2 carpet 8 light
  3 cushion 9 curtains
  4 radiator 10 armchair
  5 coffee table 11 rug
  6 ceiling 12 fireplace

3 Answers from a Japanese person
1 We've got one large window and one small window in our living room.
2 No, we've got air conditioning.
3 We've got wooden floorboards and a tatami mat.
4 There are a few pictures on the walls.
5 On the ceiling.
6 We've got a large sofa, a dinner table, a TV, a cupboard and a few cushions.

Unit 42

1 1 history 5 physics
  2 geography 6 maths
  3 biology 7 music
  4 design 8 literature

2 1 PE/physical education
  2 ICT/information communication technology
  3 literature
  4 modern languages
  5 RE/religious education
  6 chemistry
  7 art
Your own answers

5  1c  2h  3g  4i  5a  6e  7b  8d  9f  10j

6  1 start  4 leave, get
   2 uniform  5 state, private
   3 pupils, secondary

7 Answers from a German person
   1 Usually at the age of six, sometimes five.
   2 We don’t have school uniforms in Germany.
   3 At the age often.
   4 It depends on the kind of school they are attending. The earliest is 15.
   5 There are state schools and private schools. The majority of children go to state schools.

8  1 no  3 2  5 E
   2 5 4 A  6 C

9  1 take  4 results
   2 do  5 badly, failed
   3 well, grade  6 worst

10 Answers from a Turkish person
   1 They were 50 minutes.
   2 Yes.
   3 When I was eleven years old. I was in a special school and I had to pass an exam to get into it.
   4 I took one exam with many sections like Turkish language, maths, science, geography, history and general knowledge.
   5 Yes.

Unit 43

1  1 do  5 A graduate
   2 term  6 Unfortunately
   3 BSc  7 after
   4 library

2  1 degree  4 fortunately
   2 do/write  5 again
   3 do, PhD  6 last

3 Answers from a Greek person
   1 Four years.
   2 Two or three years.
   3 About ten weeks.
   4 About twelve weeks.
   5 Yes, always.

4  1 doctor  5 economist
   2 engineer  6 politician
   3 architect  7 journalist
   4 psychologist  8 businessman/manager

5  1 lawyer  7 politics
   2 architecture  DS  8 engineer
   3 computer science  DS  9 medicine
   4 software engineer  P  10 economics
   5 psychology  DS  11 IT manager
   6 business studies  DS  12 reporter

Unit 44

1  1 vet  6 businesswoman
   2 shop assistant  7 secretary
   3 nurse  8 dentist
   4 old  9 chef
   5 hasn’t  10 builder

2  1 businessman  7 builder
   2 shop assistant  8 lorry driver
   3 hairdresser  9 cleaner
   4 secretary  10 housewife
   5 police officer  11 self-employed
   6 retired  12 soldier

3  1 a hairdresser  5 retired
   2 a pilot  6 self-employed
   3 unemployed  7 a teacher
   4 the boss/a manager  8 a chef

4 Answers from a Japanese person
   1 I’m a secretary.
   2 My friend Helen is the head chef at the George Hotel.
   3 I don’t know anyone who’s a hairdresser.
   4 My mother is unemployed.
   5 I don’t know anyone who’s retired.
   6 My friend Carla is an English teacher.
   7 My friend Dave is a pilot.
   8 My father’s friend Mr Kitamura is a dentist.
   9 My father and brother are businessmen.
   10 Mr Karasawa is my boss.

Unit 45

1  1 hours a day  6 she work
   2 a factory  7 an American airline
   3 office  8 earn much
   4 work for  9 job
   5 does he earn  10 ten to six

2  1 part  5 hours
   2 a  6 day
   3 earn  7 year
   4 low  8 salary

3 Answers from a British person
   1 I’m a reporter.
   2 I work for a local newspaper.
   3 I work in an office, and I go out and talk to people.
   4 I work very long hours, often 12 or 14 hours a day.
4 1 does make 5 organize organize
2 meet meeting 6 correct
3 type typing 7 about
4 correct 8 to
5 1 meet 6 colleagues
2 answer 7 discuss
3 send/write 8 organize
4 spend 9 clients
5 making 10 have

Unit 46
1 1 screen 5 monitor
2 mouse 6 keyboard
3 personal computer 7 disk
4 memory stick 8 webcam
2 1 speaker 5 memory stick, disk
2 hard copies 6 mouse
3 hard drive 7 mouse mat
4 laptop 8 screen
3 Answers from a German person
1 I have an old PC and a new Mac.
2 Yes. I use my printer almost every day.
3 One of my computers is a laptop. I keep it in the guest room.
4 Yes, I have photos of friends, family and my holidays on the computer.
5 No, don't have a webcam.
5 1 g 2 a 3 e 4 h 5 b 6 f 7 c
6 1 clicked 5 cut
2 beginning, end 6 save
3 make/save 7 open
4 did 8 middle

Unit 47
1 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F
2 1 I must reply to Jean's message.
2 Did you get/receive my message?
3 I received an email from Li today.
4 Have you checked your emails/messages?
5 Please forward the attachment to John.
6 She sent Tia an email yesterday.
3 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Almost every day.
2 My colleagues, family and friends.
3 Commercial, healthy life emails.
4 Yes they do. They send me pictures, poems and jokes.
5 Yes.
4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S 8 S
9 D 10 S
5 1 search 4 broadband
2 download 5 website
3 on/using 6 visit

6 Answers from a Greek person
1 annaingreece@yahoo.com
2 Very rarely.
3 It's www.in.gr
4 Google.
5 No.
6 I use the internet almost every day.
7 No, never.
8 Yes, I download it onto my PC.
9 I use Google.

Unit 48
1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A
2 1 I hate chocolate.
2 They don't like doing homework very much.
3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
4 I quite like shopping.
5 She doesn't like driving.
6 I think tennis is OK.
7 I really like going out with friends.
8 She loves watching sport.
3 Answers from a German person
1 I love watching TV.
2 I really like studying English.
3 I love driving.
4 I don't like shopping for clothes.
5 I like cleaning the house.
6 I quite like writing emails.
7 I like talking on the phone.
8 I love going to the cinema.
4 1 I enjoy watching TV.
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 My favourite film is 'Tootsie'.
4 She prefers reading to writing.
5 He's a fantastic boss.
6 Was the party good fun?
7 It's a boring programme.
8 Are you keen on tennis?
5 1 fun 5 keen
2 prefer 6 enjoy
3 favourite 7 interesting
4 interested
6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 Yes it is.
2 I like both.
3 Istanbul.
4 Yes. I like swimming.
5 Yes.
6 Yes.
7 Yes.
Unit 49

1 football pitch, tennis racket, basketball, ice hockey, three nil
2 1 T
3 F You score goals in ice hockey, or You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
4 F You play football on a pitch, or You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
5 F You play ice hockey with sticks, or You play tennis with rackets.
6 T
7 T
8 F You play rugby with a rugby ball, or You play ice hockey with a puck.

3 1 game 4 score/result, nil
2 basketball 5 pitch, court
3 games, set

4 1 match/game 5 beat
2 against 6 won
3 top 7 drew
4 to 8 beat
5 1 match/game 6 beat
2 against 7 scored
3 lost 8 won
4 drew; with 9 leading
5 time 10 score

6 Your own answers

Unit 50

1 1 another place 6 inside
2 go 7 inside
3 inside 8 another place
4 inside
5 1 another place
2 go 3 collect
4 does 5 play

3 Your own answers

5 1 True.
2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
4 False. Veronica’s favourite hobby is drawing.
5 True.
6 False. Alexandra’s quite good at shooting.
7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

6 Answers from a Japanese person
1 I love exercising and cooking.
2 Older people like watching TV, gossiping and playing gateball (a Japanese game).
3 Younger people like karaoke and shopping.
4 I never listen to classical music.
5 No. I can’t play a musical instrument.
6 No. I’m a bad singer.

Unit 51

1 1 2004 4 album
2 able 5 Alex Turner
3 two 6 drums
4 F ‘tlu play football on a pitch.
5 F ‘tlu play ice hockey with sticks.
6 T
7 T
8 F You score goals in ice hockey.
9 OR
10 You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
11 OR
12 You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
13 OR
14 You play tennis with rackets.
15 OR
16 You play ice hockey with a puck.
17
18 3 1 game 4 score/result, nil
19 2 basketball 5 pitch, court
20 3 games, set
21
22 4 1 match/game 5 beat
23 2 against 6 won
24 3 top 7 drew
25 4 to 8 beat
26 5 1 match/game 6 beat
27 2 against 7 scored
28 3 lost 8 won
29 4 drew; with 9 leading
30 5 time 10 score
31
32 6 Your own answers
33
34 Unit 52

1 1 thriller 4 cartoon
2 comedy 5 love story
3 action film 6 horror film
4 F ‘tlu play football on a pitch.
5 F ‘tlu play ice hockey with sticks.
6 F ‘tlu play tennis with rackets.
7 T
8 T
9 T
10 F You score goals in ice hockey.
11 OR
12 You score points in rugby, basketball and volleyball.
13 OR
14 You play tennis, volleyball and basketball on a court.
15 OR
16 You play tennis with rackets.
17 OR
18 You play ice hockey with a puck.
19
20 3 1 romantic 4 frightening/scary
21 2 violent 5 funny
22 3 kind 6 actors
23 4 about 7 director
24 5 stars
25
26 5 Answers from a British person
27 1 The Beatles.
29 3 In 1962.
30 4 Hey Jude.
31 5 Sergeant Pepper’s Lonely Hearts Club Band.
32 6 Eleanor Rigby.
33
34 4 1 conductor 5 cello
35 2 orchestra 6 composer
36 3 classical 7 perform
37 4 concert 8 pianist
38 5 1 orchestra 6 opera singer
39 2 conductor 7 composer
40 3 pianist 8 by
41 4 violinist 9 concert, performing/singing
42
43 5 Your own answers
44
45 5 1 True.
46 2 False. Playing a musical instrument is popular in Russia.
47 3 False. Dima plays the guitar.
48 4 False. Veronica’s favourite hobby is drawing.
49 5 True.
50 6 False. Alexandra’s quite good at shooting.
51 7 False. Veronica sings in the shower.
52 8 False. Older people like repairing cars.
53
54 Answer Key 217
Answers from a Japanese person
1. I like comedies a lot.
2. 'The Holiday'.
3. At my local cinema, 'Nankai Cinema'.
6. It’s a love story.

Unit 53

1. D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 D
2. 1 magazines 5 wars
   2 report 6 opinion(s)
   3 events/news 7 celebrities
   4 disasters
4. 1 in 6 –
   2 the 7 of, on
   3 on 8 believe
   4 out 9 of
5. programme
5. 1 watch, saw/watched
   2 believe/think, none
   3 news, happened
   4 listen, heard/listened to
   5 paper/newspaper
   6 forecast
   7 watch, much
6. Your own answers

Unit 54

1. 1 abroad 5 hire
   2 arrange 6 find
   3 might 7 packed
   4 get 8 book
2. 1 abroad 6 currency
   2 flight(s) 7 insurance
   3 accommodation 8 might
   4 booked/arranged/decided 9 pack
   5 get 10 find

Unit 55

1. 1 staff 4 tourists
   2 recommended 5 facilities
   3 delicious 6 minibar
2. 1 stay 5 satellite
   2 staff 6 conditioning, heating
   3 facilities 7 guests
   4 minibar 8 recommend

Answers from a British person
1. Two or three times a year.
2. I usually read a book or magazine.
3. An aisle seat.
4. A small bag and my laptop.
Unit 57
1 1 rent 5 sea
2 swimming costume 6 perfect
3 shorts 7 relax
4 apartment 8 sunbathe
2 1 beach 4 so/two
2 got/tok, went 5 flew
3 rented, resort 6 lie

Unit 58
1 1 go 4 take
2 book 5 guided
3 visit 6 go on
2 1 took, typical 4 art
2 should, round 5 went, guide
3 got, map
3 Your own answers

Unit 59
1 1 a 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 e
2 1 Sign 4 rate
2 Change 5 per
3 currency 6 cash
3 Answers from a British person
1 The pound sterling.
2 £1 = $1.84 at the moment.
3 At a bank or a bureau de change.
4 Yes, often.
5 They are usually inside or outside banks,
at the supermarket, in stations and petrol
stations.
4 1 deliver letters
2 the name, address and postcode
3 to the post office
4 on the scales
5 a stamp
6 the postman
7 a letter, a parcel, a postcard
5 1 Is there a letter/post box near here?
2 Can you put it on the scales?
3 Can I have three stamps for Argentina?
4 Where can/do I post this letter?
5 How much is a postcard to Russia?
6 Can you buy envelopes at the post office?

Unit 60
1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
2 Max, this is Hanna. or Hanna, this is Max.
3 Bye. I hope to see you again. or I hope to
see you again. Bye.
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. or Nice to
meet you. Goodbye.

Unit 61
1 1 i 2 h 3 g 4 d 5 j 6 c 7 f 8 e 9 a
2 1 Have a nice/good day, evening, weekend,
holiday, journey, time
2 Happy Christmas, Easter, New Year,
birthday
3 Goodnight! Good luck! Well done!
Welcome home!

Unit 62
1 1 How often do you go there?
2 What kind of music do you like?
3 What does he do?
4 How long have you lived there?
5 What's wrong with Peter?
6 Who does this belong to?
7 What's his flat like?
8 Why don't you like her?
2 a 4 b 5 c 7 d 1 e 6 f 3 g 2
3 1 often 4 How/What
2 Whose 5 long
3 What 6 Who
4 1 What 4 many
2 long 5 nearest
3 time 6 seeing
5 1 far 5 close/shut
2 many 6 worth
3 Which 7 nearest
4 What 8 recommend

6 Answers from a Turkish person
1 In Adana, Turkey.
2 Half of my life.
3 Capadoccia and the coast.
4 Three hours in a car.
5 Asma Alti (a kebab house in Adana).
Unit 63

1 1 Can you lend me a pen? - Yes, of course.
   2 Could you bring the books here, please? - Yes, no problem.
   3 Could you possibly wait here a few minutes? - I'm afraid I can't.
   4 Lia, can you change places with Maris, please? - Yes, sure.

2 Possible answers
1 A Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?
   B Yes, sure.
2 A Luca, can you change places with Maria, please?
   B Yes, no problem.
3 A Could you possibly wait here a few minutes?
   B I'm afraid I can't.
4 A lia, can you change places with Maris, please?
   B Yes, sure.

3 Possible answers
1 A What about going to the beach?
   B Yes, that sounds lovely.
2 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
   B I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

Unit 64

1 1 Would you like to come round later?
   2 Yes, I'd love to.
   3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
   4 That sounds lovely.
   5 I'm afraid I can't.
   6 That would be nice.
   7 Do you want to come to a party?
   8 I'm sorry, but I'm busy tonight.

2 1 A Would you like to go out for dinner/a meal?
   B Yes, great!
2 A Do you want to come round for a coffee?
   B I'm afraid I can't.
3 A Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
   B Yes, that sounds lovely.
4 A Do you want to go out for a coffee?
   B I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

Unit 65

1 1 What shall we do this weekend?
   2 The weather's nice, so ...
   3 ... what about going to the beach?
   4 Yes, good idea.
   5 Maybe we could take the train.
   6 Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
   7 I'd prefer to get them at the station.

2 1 What shall we do this evening?
   2 Do you have a suggestion?
   3 What about going to see a film?
   4 I'd prefer to go by train.
   5 Yes, that's a good idea.

3 1 A What about going to the theatre?
   B I'm not sure about that.
2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
   B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
   A OK, let's do that.
3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
   B Let's go to an exhibition.
   A Yeah, that's a good idea.

Unit 66

1 1 hand, worry 3 Do, fine
2 eat, Could 4 like, Thanks

2 1 Can I give you a hand?
   2 Thank you very much.
   3 Would you like a drink?
   4 Thanks a lot.
   5 No, I'm fine, thanks.

3 1 A Would you like a drink?
   B Yes, please. Could I have some water?
2 A Do you need some help?
   B No, I'm fine, thanks.
3 A Would you like something to eat?
   B Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
4 A Can I give you a hand?
   B No, don't worry.

4 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 b

5 1 of 5 Shall I
2 Let 6 give
3 Shall 7 me
4 Would 8 want
Unit 67

1 1 A I'm really sorry, I've lost your dictionary.
   B Don't worry/never mind.
  2 A I'm sorry, I've forgotten your book.
   B Don't worry.
  3 A I've broken your cup – I'm very sorry.
   B It doesn't matter.
  4 That's worry.
  5 very/really, matter 7 apologize 8 rude

Unit 68

1 What do you think of it?
  2 I agree with you.
  3 I don't think it's very good.
  4 It was a waste of money.
  5 Personally, I didn't like it.
  6 I prefer the other one
  7 I think, Personally 3 of, think
  8 opinion, agree 4 sure, prefer

3 Answers from a British person
  1 I'm not sure. I think children watch too much TV.
  2 I agree. It's very bad for your health.
  3 Personally, I like it.
  4 I'm not sure. Other things are more important.
  5 I disagree. I think it's very expensive.

Unit 69

1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S
  2 engaged, phone
  3 number, code
  4 call, out, message, rang, battery
  5 wrong

3 Answers from a British person
  1 My phone number is 600949, the area code is 01632, and my mobile number is 0779 893 200.
  2 My family.
  3 Only a few minutes.
  4 No, not very often. I text my sister sometimes.

4 1 Oh, hello, is that Kamal?
  2 Just a moment.
  3 Speaking.
  4 Oh, hello, how are you?

Unit 70

1 1 useful 2 weak 3 dead 4 rich 5 quiet 10 wide
  2 1 noisy 2 narrow 3 unusual 9 asleep

5 1 confusing 6 necessary
  2 helpful 7 strange/odd
  3 impossible 8 clear
  4 mad/crazy 9 annoying/irritating
  5 only

Unit 71

1 He's 75 and he still plays tennis.
  2 It's nice there, especially in the morning.
  3 There are only three students in the class.
  4 He even works on Sunday.
  5 She's still at university.
  6 Rio is big, but São Paulo is even bigger.

2 1 only 4 only
  2 still 5 even
  3 particularly 6 still

3 1 Only 4 only
  2 still 5 even
  3 especially/ particularly 6 especially/ particularly

4 1 very
  2 absolutely
  3 a bit/a little
  4 really
  5 very/really
  6 quite

5 Possible answers
  1 He was extremely good.
  2 The holiday was really wonderful.
  3 She's a bit unfriendly.
  4 The kitchen was really clean.
  5 The room was a little small.
  6 Her new boyfriend is absolutely awful.
  7 They're very nice people.
  8 The weather was really terrible.
6 Answers from a Hungarian person
1 I grew up in Budapest.
2 I always feel hungry.
3 Once or twice a week.
4 I don't know many of them, but I get on well with my neighbours.
5 I try on trousers or shoes, but I often buy shirts without trying them on.

Unit 74
1 1 2005 midnight
2 Friday 7 the autumn
3 April 8 winter
4 the morning 9 dinner-time
5 4.00 10 the evening

Answers from a Japanese person
1 I get up at 7.30.
2 I study English at night.
3 I go swimming at the weekend.
4 I watch TV in the evening.
5 I go to sleep at around 11.30.
6 I see my family in the mornings.
7 The last time I went on holiday was in October last year.
8 The last time I went to the mountains was in 2003.
9 The last time I went to bed very late was at New Year.
10 The last time I went to a party was in December.

Unit 75
1 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 T
2 1 ago 4 time
3 diary 5 appointment
4 night 6 next

Answers from an Argentinian person
1 I read an English newspaper once a week.
2 No, never.
3 Yes, many times.
4 Yes, a few times in a lottery.
5 Oh, yes. It was terrible!
6 Yes, on a cruise.
7 Yes, many times.
8 Yes, on several occasions.

Unit 73
1 1 out 4 out
2 up 5 up
3 over 6 on

2 1 out 5 down
2 up 6 up
3 on 7 off
4 down 8 over

4 1 Take it off. 5 Take them off.
2 Try them on. 6 Try it on.
3 Turn it on. 7 Turn them on.
4 Put them on. 8 Put it on.

5 1 Could I try it on?
2 correct
3 You can take it off if you're hot.
4 Look it up in the dictionary.
5 correct
6 correct
7 Did you put it on?
8 correct
Unit 76
1 1 in 8 on 2 on 9 on 3 at 10 in 4 in 11 on 5 in 12 at 6 on 13 on 7 in 14 at
2 1 in 4 on 2 in 5 in 3 on 6 at, at, in
3 Answers from a Brazilian person
Brazil.
1 In a city.
2 In a flat.
3 Yes, Rio Guaiaba.
4 It's on the second floor.
5 Yes, I do.
6 I'm learning at work, three hours a week in private lessons.
4 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 T 9 T
5 1 next to 5 between 2 in front of 6 opposite 3 in front of 7 next to
4 next to
6 Answers from a German person
An old factory.
2 More houses.
3 A pub, and more houses.
4 Yes, there's a supermarket and a newsagents around the corner.
5 The neighbours' flat.
6 Another neighbour's flat.
8 1 trees 6 bus stop 2 motorway 7 mountain 3 river 8 stairs 4 shop 9 building 5 gate 10 field
9 1 under 6 through 2 into 7 out of 3 up 8 down 4 along 9 across 5 past 10 under

Unit 77
1 1 X ... and it's also near the park. 2 X ... and he understands Greek too.
3 ✓
4 X ... and also washed the car.
5 ✓
6 X ... and a park near the house as well.
2 1 I often eat ice cream and I also like yoghurt.
2 I enjoy watching TV but I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English and I can understand German as well.
4 I read a lot of books but I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.
3 Your own answers
4 1 because of 4 so 2 to 5 to 3 because 6 so
5 1 to 5 so 2 so 6 to 3 because of 7 because of 4 because 8 to

Unit 78
1 1 sure 4 sure 2 not sure 5 sure 3 not sure 6 not sure
2 1 if 4 when 2 when 5 when 3 if 6 if
3 1 when 4 when 2 when 5 while/when 3 while/when 6 when
4 1 Then 2 Afterwards/After that 3 Finally 4 First/First of all/Firstly 5 then/after that/afterwards
5 1 Firstly/First/First of all, she made the pasta sauce, and then she boiled the pasta. After that/Then/Afterwards/Finally, she added the sauce to the pasta.
2 Firstly/First/First of all, I did a degree in History, and then I did a Masters degree. After that/Afterwards, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
3 Firstly/First/First of all, we started our holiday in Heidelberg, and then we stayed in Munich for a few days. After that/Afterwards/Finally, we flew back to Rome.
4 Firstly/First/First of all, I made a shopping list, and then I went to the market. After that/Afterwards, I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner.
6 **Answers from a Greek person**
First of all I went to see a friend, and then we had lunch together. After that, I went home and watched my favourite show on the TV and after that I read a book. Late in the evening I had dinner and finally went to bed at about midnight.

**Unit 79**

1  1. She's got blue eyes.
2. They've got a small dog.
3. I haven't got a mobile phone.
4. He hasn't got any money.
5. Have you got any sisters?
6. Has she got a flat in town?

2  1. Has she got any children? OR Does she have any children?
2. They've got a lovely garden. OR They have a lovely garden.
3. Has she got long hair? OR Does she have long hair?
4. My sister hasn't got a boyfriend. OR My sister doesn't have a boyfriend.
5. Have you got a computer? OR Do you have a computer?
6. We haven't got any friends here. OR We don't have any friends here.

3  1. got
2. Do
3. Have

4 **Answers from a British person**
1. Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2. Yes, an Apple.
3. Yes, his name's Barney.
5. Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group 1</th>
<th>Group 2</th>
<th>Group 3</th>
<th>Group 4</th>
<th>Group 5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rest</td>
<td>breakfast</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>swim</td>
<td>holiday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>lunch</td>
<td>shower</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>weekend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dinner</td>
<td>wash</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>journey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6  1. walk
2. drink
3. dinner

7  1. eat/drink
2. rest/break
3. break
4. journey

**Unit 80**

1  1. Did you get my message?
2. I must get some new clothes.
3. We got home late last night.
4. It's getting cold.
5. I got three letters today.
6. Where did you get that bag?
7. He needs to get a job.
8. Do you want to get a/the train?

2  1. receive
2. buy
3. arrive
4. become

3  1. get a/the bus
2. get here/home/back
3. get them
4. getting cold
5. getting late
6. get it
7. get one
8. get a bus/taxi

4  1. receive
2. buy
3. arrive
4. become
5. receive
6. buy
7. obtain
8. travel

3  1. get a/the bus
2. get here/home/back
3. get them
4. getting cold
5. getting late
6. get it
7. get one
8. get a bus/taxi
Review answer key

Basic English

Unit 1
1 twelve
2 fifteen
3 thirteen
4 thirty-four
5 eleven
6 seventy-nine
7 a/hundred and twelve
8 twenty-seven
9 a/hundred and seventy-five
10 two hundred and eighty-six
11 forty-one
12 nine hundred and fifty-three

Unit 2
1 twenty to two, five to two
2 midnight/midday, quarter past twelve
3 five past eleven, twenty past eleven
4 twenty past two, twenty-five to three
5 five to nine, ten past nine
6 half past six, quarter to seven
7 twenty-five past five, twenty to six

Unit 3
1 date, of
2 month, year
3 season
4 March
5 autumn
6 Thursday
7 May
8 birthday
9 Year’s Day
10 season

Unit 4
1 Italy C
2 Hungary C
3 Mexico C
4 Swiss N
5 China C
6 Czech N
7 Egypt C
8 Spanish N
9 Brazil C
10 Turkey C
11 Greek N
12 French N
13 Germany C
14 Russia C
15 Argentinian N
16 Portugal C
17 Polish
18 Italian
19 Chinese
20 Spanish
21 Australian

Unit 5
1 board
2 rubber
3 noticeboard
4 dictionary
5 pencil sharpener
6 notebook
7 CD player
8 chair
9 table/desk
10 folder

Unit 6
1 sentence
2 adverb
3 preposition
4 phrase
5 regular
6 article
7 pronoun
8 word
9 adjective
10 singular
11 irregular
12 plural

Unit 7
1 Wrong.
2 Spelling is how you write something, and pronunciation is how you say something.
3 Your own answer.
4 /’plɛln/.
5 It’s the opposite of right or correct.
6 No, that’s wrong.
7 A frying pan.
8 S-T-A-M-P.

People

Unit 8
1 name
2 you come
3 from
4 exactly
5 I have
6 postcode
7 do
8 ‘m/am
9 are you
10 how old
Unit 9

A R T A L S T A T

Unit 10

1 My brother is eighteen years old.
2 I was born in 1990.
3 My sister is younger than me.
4 His parents are divorced.
5 There are five of us in my family.
6 She is older than her brother.
7 We spend a lot of time together.
8 Who is the youngest in the family?

Unit 11

1 Using your hands: push, pull, carry, drop, turn something off, put something down

Using your feet or legs: walk, stand up, jump, run, ride, climb

2 1 door 2 a wall 3 a radio 4 a bicycle 5 a bicycle
6 a bag 7 a pencil 8 a tree 9 a book 10 a bed

Unit 12

1 1A 2B 3B 4A 5A 6A 7B 8B 9B 10A 11B 12A 13A

Unit 13

1 Possible answers
1 He’s short and overweight. He’s got short, brown hair and a moustache. He’s middle-aged.
2 She’s average height and average weight. She’s got long, blonde, curly hair. She’s a teenager/young person.
3 He’s got medium-length, fair, wavy hair. He’s got brown eyes and a beard. He’s an adult.
4 She’s attractive. She’s got short, grey hair and brown eyes. She’s elderly.

2 1 a child 2 a teenager 3 in your mid-twenties 4 in your early thirties 5 in your late thirties
6 middle-aged 7 in your early sixties 8 elderly

Unit 14

1 Positive: funny, clever, kind, sociable
Negative: stupid, untidy, horrible
Positive or negative: quiet, organized, serious

2 1 lazy 2 shy 3 shared 4 fun
5 intelligent 6 on my own 7 funny 8 organized

Unit 15

1 1 went 2 married 3 relationship 4 get 5 had

2 1 get 2 become 3 is 4 see 5 give 6 become 7 get 8 is

Unit 16

1 1 excited 2 hungry 3 surprised 4 embarrassed 5 worried
6 tired 7 scared 8 nervous 9 matter 10 thirsty

2 1P 2N 3N 4N 5N 6P 7N 8N 9N 10P
Everyday life

Unit 17
1 We sometimes go for a walk after lunch.
2 Do you usually play tennis at the weekend?
3 I usually go to the gym, and then I go home.
4 She listens to music on her MP3 player when she goes shopping.
5 On Sundays I often stay in and watch TV.
6 I talk to my parents every evening.
7 My sister occasionally comes round and we have dinner together.
8 What time do you get to work in the morning?

Unit 18
1 socks 6 tie
2 hat 7 jumper
3 gloves 8 tights
4 boots 9 T-shirt
5 watch 10 belt
2 1 yellow 6 red
2 green 7 orange
3 purple 8 grey
4 pink 9 pale/light blue
5 brown 10 dark blue
3 1 a scarf 2 a pair of jeans or some jeans
3 some ties 4 a pair of trousers or some trousers
5 some shirts 6 a jacket
7 a pair of trainers or some trainers
8 a pair of sandals or some sandals

Unit 19
1 take 9 cash desk
2 loose 10 medium
3 cheap 11 help
4 size 12 wrong
5 try 13 casual
6 changing 14 assistant
7 pay 15 leave
8 horrible 16 need
2 1 looking 7 too
2 take 8 size
3 nice 9 lovely/nice
4 on 10 them
5 room 11 pay
6 look 12 cash

Unit 20
1 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T
2 1 Lottery 5 price 9 earn
2 sold 6 saved 10 paid
3 bought 7 paid 11 bills
4 cost 8 in 12 fare

Unit 21
1 1 a bit 4 a bit of
2 a lot of 5 a bit
3 a lot 6 a lot of
2 Across Down
2 blows 1 lot
5 ice 3 storm
8 humid 4 windy
9 snow 6 shower
11 freezing 7 thunder
12 heavy 10 shines
13 dry 11 foggy

Unit 22
1 I've got a headache.
2 I've got a sore throat.
3 I've got toothache.
4 I've got backache.
5 I've got flu.
6 I feel sick.
7 I don't feel well.
8 My arm hurts.
9 I've got a pain in my ear.

Unit 23
1 something 6 Take
2 Try/Take 7 could
3 tablets 8 box
4 often 9 medicine
5 take
Food and drink

Unit 24
Animal: duck, pig, sheep, lamb, cow
Meat: beef, duck, pork, lamb, ham
Fish: tuna, salmon
Seafood: crab, mussels, prawns, squid

Unit 25
1 Possible answers
red: red pepper, tomato, cherry, chilli, strawberry
yellow: banana, lemon, pineapple, melon
orange: orange, carrot, peach, mango
white/cream: garlic, mushroom, potato, cauliflower
green: peas, beans, cabbage, lettuce, cucumber, courgette

Unit 26
1 Possible answers
Packet: biscuits, pasta, rice, butter
Carton: orange juice, milk
Box: eggs, matches, chocolates
Bottle: milk, olive oil, water, orange juice, wine
Jar: jam, olives
Tin: tomatoes, tuna

2 Possible answers
1 Could I have some sugar, please?
2 I'd like some sugar, please.
3 Have you got any sugar?
4 Anything else?
5 That's it, thanks.
6 How much (sugar) would you like?

Unit 27
1 C I'd like a toasted ham sandwich please.
2 W Is that to eat here or take away?
3 C Take away. And a cheese baguette, please.
4 W Fine. Anything else?
5 C Yes, a black coffee and two teas with lemon.
6 W OK, it will be a couple of minutes.
7 W Have a seat.

Unit 28
1 1 fork, spoon 5 pepper
   2 main course, dessert 6 vinegar
   3 fried or roast or boiled 7 white
   4 medium, well done 8 sparkling
2 1 W Are you ready to order?
   C Yes, I'll have the tomato soup.
   W Right. And for your main course?
   C Fillet steak with chips.
   2 W Do you want red wine or white wine?
   C Red wine, please.
   W OK. Is that a bottle or just a glass?
   3 At the end of the meal.
   C Could I have the bill, please?
   W Yes, of course.

Getting around

Unit 29
1 Does this bus go to The National Museum?
2 How many stops is it to the railway station?
3 Excuse me, does this bus go to Alfred Road?
4 How long does it take to get to the centre?
5 Does the 31 stop next to the post office?
6 Does the 9 stop outside the school?
7 Which bus do I get to Queen Street?
8 Do the buses run every ten minutes?
9 How long does it take to the centre?
10 How often do the buses run?

Unit 30
1 1 platform 6 journey
   2 fast 7 carriage
   3 miss 8 ticket
   4 reserve 9 fare
   5 timetable
   The word in the grey squares is 'passenger'.
2 1 next train 4 leave
   2 direct 5 get to
   3 change 6 platform

Unit 31
1 1 The bank is on the right.
   2 How do I get to the river?
   3 Go along here and turn left.
   4 Go straight on and turn right.
   5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the bank?
   6 Yes, it's on the corner of this street.
2 1 The bank is opposite the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep going.
3 Is there a post office near here?
4 It’s on the your left. OR It’s on the year left.
5 Turn to left and go straight on.
6 It’s the third turning on the right side.

Unit 32
1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 T 9 F 10 T
2 1 motorway 5 lane
2 speed limit 6 traffic jams
3 overtake 7 rush hour
4 accident 8 take

Unit 33
1 ‘no parking’ 5 ‘sale’
2 ‘entrance’ or ‘way in’ 6 out of order
3 ‘no vacancies’ 7 ‘no exit’
4 ‘please do not disturb’ 8 ‘no smoking’

Places

Unit 34
1 north 6 capital
2 south 7 river
3 coast; coast 8 mountain
4 enormous 9 beach
5 border 10 famous

Unit 35
1 a modern city 5 there’s nothing to do
2 over a million 6 a quiet street
3 north-east 7 clean
4 dangerous 8 fact
2 1 of
2 population 8 famous
3 historic 9 Statue
4 palace 10 Square
5 place 11 Park
6 city 12 cosmopolitan

Unit 36
1 1 valley 5 grass
2 healthy 6 path
3 boat 7 lake
4 farmer 8 alone
2 1 horse 4 lonely
2 grow 5 own
3 crops 6 countryside

Unit 37
1 1 shopping centre
2 newsagent’s
3 chemist’s
4 hypermarket, supermarket
5 baker’s
6 bookshop
7 butcher’s
8 department store
9 music shop
2 1 queue 6 stalls
2 shopping 7 indoors
3 convenient 8 basket
4 prefer 9 get
5 market 10 checkout
The word in the grey squares is ‘supermarket’.

Unit 38
1 1 bathroom 5 garage
2 kitchen 6 lift
3 bedroom 7 garden
4 study 8 home
2 T 3 F 4 G 5 I 6 H 7 C 8 E

Unit 39
1 1 dishwasher, sink 5 cupboard
2 washing machine 6 fridge
3 bin 7 freezer
4 microwave 8 oven
2 1 put 4 Do, empty
2 Put, turn 5 cook
3 turn, out

Unit 40
1 bedroom: wardrobe, blanket, sheet, chest of drawers, single bed, desk
8 bathroom: towel, toilet, shower, washbasin, bath, bidet
2 1 put on or take off, make-up or tissues
2 have, a razor or an electric razor
3 clean, a toothbrush and toothpaste
4 do or brush, a brush or a comb
5 have, soap
Unit 41

1 1 Picture 1 has got cushions, but picture 2 hasn't.
2 Picture 1 has got one armchair, picture 2 has got two.
3 Picture 1 has got a radiator, but picture 2 hasn't.
4 Picture 1 has got two lamps, but picture 2 has got one.
5 Picture 1 has got a picture on the wall, but picture 2 hasn't.
6 Picture 1 has got a rug on the floor, but picture 2 hasn't.
7 Picture 2 has got a fireplace, but picture 1 hasn't.
8 Picture 2 has got a carpet, but picture 1 hasn't.
9 Picture 2 has got a light, but picture 1 hasn't.
10 Picture 2 has got a coffee table, but picture 1 hasn't.

Study and work

Unit 42

1 1 biology 7 geography
2 history 8 chemistry
3 literature 9 design and
4 physics technology
5 maths/music 10 modern languages
6 art

2 1 j 2 a 3 g 4 e 5 i 6 b 7 f 8 h 9 d
3 1 badly 4 terrible/bad
2 failed 5 nursery
3 state 6 best

Unit 43

1 1 science 5 again
2 lasts 6 degree
3 terms 7 research
4 do/write 8 PhD or Doctor of Philosophy

2 People: undergraduate, engineer, lawyer, politician
Subjects: medicine, economics, architecture, business studies, politics
Phrases: do research, do a degree, write an essay

Unit 44

Possible answers
1 a dentist, a vet, a businessman, a businesswoman
2 a dentist, a nurse, a vet, a builder, a hairdresser
3 a businessman or businesswoman, a pilot, a shop assistant
4 retired, unemployed
5 a pilot, a nurse, a police officer, a soldier
6 a businessman, a businesswoman

Unit 45

1 1 J 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 c 6 i 7 e 8 d 9 f
2 1 in 4 spend
2 time 5 earn/get
3 a 6 colleagues

Unit 46

1 1 laptop 5 backup copy
2 keyboard 6 hard drive
3 mouse mat 7 printout
4 memory stick 8 webcam

2 1 copy 5 save
2 screen 6 print
3 cut 7 paste
4 mouse

The word in the grey squares is 'document'.

Unit 47

1 chatroom, broadband, download, website, online, search engine, inbox, junk mail
2 1 attachment 7 broadband
2 message 8 internet
3 online 9 receive
4 delete 10 use
5 fast 11 visit
6 send

Hobbies and interests

Unit 48

1 1 I love it, It's my favourite thing, It's wonderful, I think it's fantastic
2 I quite enjoy it, It's quite enjoyable
3 I think it's OK
4 I'm not very keen on it, I don't like it very much, I'm not very interested in it
5 I really hate it

2 1 interested 4 to
2 on 5 boring
3 driving 6 quite likes
Unit 49
1 1 volleyball, tennis, basketball
2 rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, tennis, basketball
3 football, rugby, ice hockey, volleyball, basketball
4 a) tennis b) ice hockey
2 1 matches 4 scored
2 drew 5 goals
3 lost 6 top

Unit 50
1 1 favourite, go 4 instrument
2 does 5 classical
3 repairs 6 do, spend
2 1 spending 4 play
2 going 5 arranging
3 games

Unit 51
1 Pop and rock: band, lead singer, drummer, single, guitar
Classical music: orchestra, violin, conductor, composer, cello
2 Possible answers
1 Bryn Terfel is a famous opera singer in my country.
2 Chris Martin is lead singer with Coldplay.
3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous conductor.
4 The London Symphony orchestra comes from my country.
5 Alfred Brendel is a great pianist.
6 Sergeant Pepper by the Beatles is one of my favourite albums.
7 ‘Beautiful liar’ by Beyoncé and Shakira is number 1 in the charts at the moment.
8 Charlie Watts is the drummer with the Rolling Stones.

Unit 52
1 1 war, violent 4 thriller, exciting
2 comedy, funny 5 love, romantic
3 horror, frightening
2 1 about 5 reviews
2 in 6 director
3 stars 7 see
4 actor

Unit 53
1 I usually buy a newspaper every day to find (1) out what has happened, but yesterday I listened (2) to the news in the car and then had dinner and watched it (3) on TV. As usual most (4) of it was bad news: more than twenty people (5) died in a terrible road accident. After the news, I watched an interesting (6) programme about a television news (7) reporter who was in Thailand during the Tsunami in 2004.
2 1 c 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 b 6 a

Holidays
Unit 54
1 arrange 6 book
2 currency 7 pack
3 hire 8 flight
4 go abroad 9 accommodation
5 holiday

Unit 55
1 1 h 2 a 3 d 4 j 5 g 6 f 7 i 8 k
9 b 10 c
2 1 stayed 5 delicious
2 suite 6 night
3 facilities 7 parking
4 staff 8 book

Unit 56
1 1 i 2 e 3 g 4 h 5 b 6 a 7 d 8 f 9 c
2 1 trolley 6 got
2 ticket 7 fastened
3 scales 8 landed
4 flight 9 collected
5 delayed 10 went/walked

Unit 57
1 ... We flew to Marseille ...
2 ... we had to get a bus to Cassis ...
3 ... holiday resort by the sea ...
4 ... We rented an apartment ...
5 ... we went for a walk ...
6 ... we sunbathed on the beach ...
7 ... an hour or so ...
8 ... was perfect for the whole week ...

Unit 58
1 We're going on a tour of the city this afternoon.
2 Did you go sightseeing in Paris?
3 We always get lost in a new place.
4 She took a lot of photos on her holiday.
5 Did you visit the museum? (NOT at the museum)
6 There were lots of typical tourists.
7 There's a good exhibition at the art gallery.
8 Have you got a guidebook about London, please?
Unit 59
1 1 post office 7 per cent
2 postcode 8 parcel
3 postman/ 9 currency
postwoman 10 cash machine
4 postbox 11 change
5 postcards 12 commission
6 put, put 13 charge, charge
2 1 send
2 envelope/letter/parcel 5 into
3 deliver 6 bureau, change

Social English

Unit 60
1 15 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 S 8 S 9 D 10 S
2 1 hope to see you 5 shake hands
again 6 see you soon
2 how are you? 7 nice to meet you
3 not bad 8 hi there
4 how do you do? 9 see you later

Unit 61
1 happy birthday
2 have a good weekend
3 congratulations
4 good luck
5 well done
6 welcome home
7 have a good holiday
8 Happy New Year

Unit 62
1 1 How many? 6 How long?
2 Why? 7 Whose?
3 How far? 8 Which?
4 How often? 9 Who?
5 Where?
2 1 How 4 often
2 do 5 long
3 does 6 kind of
3 Answers from a South Korean person
► I have a problem with speaking fluently
and pronunciation.
1 I've got one brother.
2 I work at a travel agency.
3 She works in a nursery school as a teacher.
4 More than ten hours a week.
5 For ten years.
6 I don't like playing games, but I like
watching football.

Unit 63
1 1 you, I 6 I
2 I, I 7 I
3 you 8 you
4 you 9 you
5 I
2 no problem, of course, go ahead, I'm afraid I
need it, that's fine

Unit 64
1 A Would you like to have lunch
tomorrow? or Do you want to have lunch tomorrow?
B I'm afraid but I can't. or I'm sorry but I
can't.
2 A Would you like to go skiing this
weekend? or Do you want to go skiing
this weekend?
B Yes, that sounds fun! or That would be
fun.
3 A Would you like to come round here for
a drink tonight?
B Yes, I'd love to, but I'm busy.
4 A Do you want to come round for a meal
at the weekend?
B I'm sorry, but I'm busy this weekend.

Unit 65
1 shall 5 about
2 maybe 6 idea
3 could 7 Let
4 sure

Unit 66
1 Would you like a sandwich? Do you want
a drink? or Do you want a sandwich?
Would you like a drink?
2 Do you need a hand? Do you want some
help? or Do you need some help? Do you
want a hand?
3 No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.
4 Thanks a lot. Thank you very much.
5 Let me pay for the coffees. Shall I do that
for you?
6 That's very kind of you. Thank you very
much.
Unit 67

Possible answers
1 A I'm sorry, I forgot to post your letter.
   B Never mind. OR It doesn't matter.
   Don't worry.
2 A I'm sorry I'm late.
   B That's OK. OR Don't worry.
3 A Sorry, could you repeat that, please?
   B Sure, no problem.

Unit 68

1 opinion 4 prefer
2 excellent 5 personally
3 disagree 6 a waste of

Unit 69

1 ring/call, at the moment 3 ring/phone
2 speaking 4 just a moment
5 sent me a text

Unit 70

1 narrow 4 rich
2 dead 5 asleep
3 noisy
2 helpful 5 noisy
2 common 6 unnecessary
3 useless 7 clear
4 strange 8 annoying
The word in grey is 'necessary'.

Unit 71

1 We couldn't play the match with only ten players.
2 He lives in Italy, but still speaks English most of the time.
3 The food is absolutely fantastic in that restaurant.
4 Max didn't like the film but I thought it was quite good.
5 The last film was good, but this is even better.
6 My English is getting a bit better.

Unit 72

Across
1 done 4 known
2 seen 5 ran
3 bought 6 read
11 known 7 found
13 ran 8 slept
14 thought 10 sent
15 left 12 forget

Down
1 work 4 time
2 why 5 them
3 get 6 on (well)

Unit 73

1 I grew up in a village.
2 Why don't you sit down?
3 I must find out their address.
4 She fell over in the street.
5 Did you go out last night?
6 Could you turn on the light? OR Could you turn the light on?
7 Look it up in your dictionary.
8 Could I try them on?

Unit 74

In: December, summer, 2007, the afternoon, the 21st century
At: three o'clock, half past five, breakfast, the weekend, midnight
On: Monday morning, the sixth of March, my birthday, Tuesday, Friday evening

Unit 75

1 last week 5 this evening
2 two days ago 6 tomorrow morning
3 yesterday 7 tomorrow evening
4 afternoon 8 next Monday
4 last night 9 in ten days' time

2 I stayed in one of the rooms in the hotel until I found an apartment or found somewhere to live.
2 I met a Spanish man after I got a job in (the south of) Portugal.
3 I've lived in the house I bought since I got married.
4 I've lived in Portugal for five years.
5 Soon I'm going to have a baby.
6 At the moment we're preparing a room for the baby.

REVIEW ANSWER KEY 233
Unit 76

1 1 over 7 next to
2 past 8 into
3 near 9 out of
4 above 10 opposite
5 down 11 between
6 across 12 through

2 1 near, above, next to, opposite
   2 past, across, into, out of, through
   (‘near’ and ‘next to’ are also possible)

3 In: my town, Germany, the countryside, the bedroom
   At: school, home, a football match, work
   On: the table, the wall, the coast, the second floor

Unit 77

1 1 g 2 i 3 e 4 h 5 f 6 d 7 a 8 b
2 1 because of 4 because
2 to 5 so
3 also 6 as well

Unit 78

1 1 When you’re travelling on a long flight,
   always wear comfortable clothes.
2 If you can choose your seat on the plane,
   sit near the front where it’s quiet.
3 While/When you are waiting for the flight,
   sit in the departure lounge.
4 When you get off, don’t leave anything
   on the plane.
5 If you feel ill during the flight, tell the airline staff.
6 If you lose your passport on holiday, go to the embassy.

2 1 first of all 4 After that or Then
2 while 5 finally
3 Then or After that 6 if

Unit 79

1 1 have 5 didn’t
2 a 6 time
3 Did you have 7 a rest
4 Have 8 was, had

2 1 We had a break for ten minutes in the middle of the lesson.
2 We had something to eat at the beach.
3 My sister’s/has got blonde hair.
4 I was hot, so I had a shower/bath before dinner.
5 We had a terrible/bad day at work. I hate my job!
6 Have a lovely holiday/time in the Caribbean!
7 I’d like to go on holiday, but I don’t have any money.
8 On Sunday, we just had a rest and did nothing.

Unit 80

1 1 arrive 9, obtain 2, buy 7, travel by 8,
   receive 4 and 6, become 3 and 5
2 Answers from a Hungarian person
   1 No, I’m happy in my current job.
   2 Yes, I get very tired when it’s hot.
   3 I get about one or two messages a day.
   4 No.
   5 Tickets to see my favourite actor at the theatre.
   6 I bought them from a shop in the centre of town.
   7 I never get the train to work, I always walk.
   8 I got home at about ten o’clock last night.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3A</td>
<td>Capital letters</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3B</td>
<td>Saying and writing dates</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>People from a country</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>information</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10B</td>
<td>How old are you?</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11A</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13A</td>
<td>thin, fat, ugly</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13C</td>
<td>Other phrases for age</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14A</td>
<td>What's ... like?</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14B</td>
<td>really</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15A</td>
<td>relationship</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15B</td>
<td>each other</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16A</td>
<td>get + adjective</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17A</td>
<td>usually and normally</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17C</td>
<td>every and all</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18A</td>
<td>wear</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18B</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19B</td>
<td>too and very</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19C</td>
<td>I'll take it/I'll leave it</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20A</td>
<td>Money</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21A</td>
<td>a lot (of)/a bit (of)</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22A</td>
<td>be ill/sick</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22B</td>
<td>should + verb</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Asking for things in a chemist's</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>pig</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25B</td>
<td>salad</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26A</td>
<td>Uncountable nouns</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26B</td>
<td>tin and can</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26C</td>
<td>how much and how many</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Yes, please? and Yes, please.</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28C</td>
<td>another or some more</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>How long does it take?</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30A</td>
<td>last</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30B</td>
<td>book something in advance</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Excuse me ...</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35A</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36B</td>
<td>alone and lonely</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37A</td>
<td>Noun + shop</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38B</td>
<td>flat, house and home</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39B</td>
<td>do + noun</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40B</td>
<td>have + noun</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42A</td>
<td>be good at something</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42B</td>
<td>at (the age of) ...</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42C</td>
<td>exam (examination)</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43A</td>
<td>How long does it last?</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>a/an with jobs</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45B</td>
<td>Spend time doing something</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46A</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48A</td>
<td>like/love/hate + -ing</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48B</td>
<td>interesting/interested</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49B</td>
<td>Irregular verbs</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51B</td>
<td>by</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52A</td>
<td>What kind of ...?</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53B</td>
<td>watch, see, listen, hear</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>might + verb</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55B</td>
<td>That's a shame/What a shame</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>should + verb</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60A</td>
<td>Introductions</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60B</td>
<td>See you ...</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>cheers</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62A</td>
<td>whose and belong to</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62B</td>
<td>which or what?</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63A</td>
<td>Being polite</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63B</td>
<td>lend and borrow</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Would you like to ... or Do you want to ...?</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Saying no</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66A</td>
<td>Saying thank you</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66B</td>
<td>let me + verb</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>(I'm) sorry</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69A</td>
<td>Saying phone numbers</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70A</td>
<td>Position of adjectives</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71B</td>
<td>Gradable and ungradable adjectives</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72B</td>
<td>ever</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73A</td>
<td>Phrasal verbs</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>at</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75B</td>
<td>for and since</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79A</td>
<td>have and have got</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word list / Index

Numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

a.m. / əˈem/ 2
ATM / ət ˈem/ 59
able / əˈbl/ 51
about (= approximately) / əˈbaʊt/ 1
about (= the subject is) / əˈbaʊt/ 52
above / əˈbaʊv/ 76
abroad / əˈbrɔːd/ 54
absolutely / əˈbolsətl/ 71
accept / əˈkɛpt/ 66
access / əˈkɛs/ 18
accessories / əˈkɛsəriːz/ 18
accommodation / əˈkəmədɪˈkeɪʃən/ 54
account / əˈkaʊnt/ 20
across / əˈkrɒs/ 76
action / əˈkeɪʃən/ 52
actor / əˈkæktə(r)/ 52
actress / əˈkætərɪs/ 52
address / əˈdres/ 8, 9, 47, 59
adjective / əˈdʒɪktɪv/ 6
adult / əˈdʌlt/ 13
advance as in in advance / əˈdvɑːns/ 30
adverb / əˈdvɜːb/ 13
advert / əˈdɜːvət/ 53
advertisement / əˌdɜːvəˌtɪmdəm/ 53
advice / əˈvaɪs/ 15
afraid as in I’m afraid / əˈfred/ 63, 64
afraid as in I’m afraid not / əˈfred/ 55
Africa / əˈfɪkrə/ 4
after / əˈfɜː(ə)r/ 2, 75
after that / əˈfɜː(ə)ðət/ 78
afternoon / əˈfɜː(ə)nʌn/ 2, 60
afterwards / əˈfɜːrəðdɑːz/ 78
again / əˈɡen/ 43, 60
against / əˈɡenst/ 49
ago / əˈɡoʊ/ 75
agree, agree with someone / əˈɡriː/ 68
ahead as in go ahead / əˈhed/ 63
air conditioning / əˈkɔndəˈʃən/ 55
airline / əˈleɪn/ 45
airport / əˈpoʊrt/ 56
aisle seat / əˈsɪlz/ 56
album / əˈlɜːbəm/ 51
alive / əˈlaɪv/ 70
all / ɔl/ 17, 53
all as in first of all / ɔl/ 78
all as in that’s all / ɔl/ 26
all right / ɔl ˈrɛt/ 63, 67
almost / əˈmɔːst/ 2
alone / ɔˈloon/ 36
along / əˈloŋ/ 31, 76
also / əˈsəʊ/ 77
altogether / əˈtoʊɡər/ 20
always / əˈweɪz/ 17
American / əˈmɛərɪkən/ 4
and / ənd, ət/ 77
and as in and you / ənd, ət/ 61
angry / əˈgrɛɪ/ 16
animal / əˈnɜːml/ 24
ankle / əˈŋkl/ 12
annoying / əˈnəʊɪŋ/ 70
another / əˈnʌðə(r)/ 28
answer the phone / əˈnɑːn ˈfaʊn/ 45
antisepctic / əˈnɪtˌsɛpətɪk/ 23
anything else? / əˈnɪθɪŋ ˈels/ 26
apartment / əˈpɑːmtənt/ 57
apologize / əˈpɔːləˌzaɪz/ 67
apple / əˈpl/ 25
appointment / əˈpɔɪntmənt/ 75
Arabic / əˈræbɪk/ 4
architect / əˈrɪktətʃər/ 43
architecture / əˈrɪktəˈtʃɜːrə(r)/ 43
area / əˈrɪə/ 4, 36, 69
Argentina / əˈrɪdʒəˈtɪmə/ 4
Argentinian / əˈrɪdʒəˈtɪmɪən/ 4
arm / ərm/ 12
armchair / əˈɑːmtʃɑː(r)/ 41
arrange / əˈrɛndʒ/ 54
arranging as in flower arranging / əˈrɛndʒɪŋ/ 50
art / ərt/ 42
art gallery / ərt ˈgɛləri/ 58
article / əˈtɪkl/ 53
article as in (in)definite article / əˈtɪkl/ 7
as well / əz ˈwel/ 77
Asia / əˈzɪə/ 4
asleep / əˈslɪp/ 70
at as in be good at / ət, ət/ 42
at (= place) / ət, ət/ 76
at (= time) / ət, ət/ 2, 74
attachment / əˈtʃɪtʃmənt/ 47
attractive / əˈtræktɪv/ 13
aubergine / əˈbɔːrʒɪn/ 25
aunt / ənt/ 10
Australia / əˈstrɒlərɪə/ 4
Australian / əˈstrɒlɪən/ 4
autumn / əˈtəm/ 3
average / əˈvɜːrɪdʒ/ 13
cemetery /ˈsɪməri/ 50, 52
circle v /ˈsɜːkl/ Starter
city /ˈsɪti/ 35
classical /ˈklɑːsɪkl/ 50, 51
clean v /ˈklin/ 17, 39, 40
clean adj /ˈklin/ 35
cleaner /ˈklinə(r)/ 44
clear /ˈklɛə(r)/ 14
click on something /ˈklɪk ɒn ˈsʌmθɪŋ/ 46
client /ˈklɛnt/ 45
climb /ˈklaɪmb/ 41
clock /ˈkloʊk/ 2, 30
close v /ˈkloʊz/ 11. 62
closed as in flight closed /ˈkloʊzd/ 56
closest friend /ˈkloʊz̩st ˈfrend/ 15
cloud /ˈklaʊd/ 21
cloaked /ˈklaʊdɪd/ 21
cloy /ˈkloʊv/ 34
coast /ˈkoʊst/ 34
coat /ˈkoʊt/ 18
code /ˈkɔd/ 69
coffee /ˈkəfɪ/ 27
coffee table /ˈkəfɪ ˈteɪbl/ 41
coin /ˈkɔɪn/ 20
cold adj /ˈkɔld/ 21
cold n /ˈkəʊld/ 22
colleague /ˈkəʊliːdʒ/ 45
collect (= keep together) /ˈkəlɛkt/ 50
collect (= pick up) /ˈkəlɛkt/ 56
college /ˈkɔlɪdʒ/ 42
colour /ˈkələ(r)/ 13
comb /ˈkəʊm/ 40
come from /ˈkʌm frəm, frəm/ 4, 8
come round /ˈkʌm ˈrəʊnd/ 17. 64
comey /ˈkəʊmɪ/ 52
comfortable /ˈkəm(ə)tabl/ 19
commission /ˈkəmɪʃn/ 59
common /ˈkəʊmən/ 70
company /ˈkəmpənɪ/ 45
complete v /ˈkəmplɪt/ Starter
complete opposites /ˈkəmplɪt ˈɔpəzɪts/ 14
composer /ˈkəmpəzə(r)/ 51
computer game /ˈkəmpjʊtər ˈɡeɪm/ 50
computer science /ˈkəmpjʊtər ˈsəɪəns/ 43
concert /ˈkɒnsərnt/ 51
conditioning as in air conditioning /ˈkənˈdɪʃənɪŋ/ 55
conductor /ˈkəndʌktə(r)/ 51
confusing /ˈkənˈfjuːzɪŋ/ 70
congratulations /ˈkəŋgrəˌteɪʃənɪz/ 61
continue (at school) /ˈkənˈtɪnjuː (ət ˈskɔːl)/ 42
convenient /ˈkənvɪˈniənt/ 37
cook v /ˈkʊk/ 39
cooked /ˈkʊkt/ 39
cooker /ˈkʊkə(r)/ 25
cooking /ˈkʊkɪŋ/ 50
cool /ˈkuːl/ 21
copy n, v /ˈkəʊpi/ 46
correr /ˈkɔːnɛr/ 31
correct v /ˈkərɛkt/ Starter, 7
cosmopolitan /kosˈmɒləpiˈlən/ 35
cost v /ˈkɒst/ 20
cotton wool /ˈkətn ˈwʊl/ 23
cough /ˈkəf/ 22
could (= permission) /kəld/ 63
could (= request) /kəld/ 7, 23, 63
could (= suggestion) /kəld/ 64
countryside /ˈkʌntrɪsaɪd/ 36
couple (= two people in a relationship) /ˈkəpl/ 15
couple as in a couple of minutes /ˈkəpl/ 27
courgette /ˈkəʊrət/ 25
course (= of study) /ˈkɔːs/ 43
course (= part of a meal) /ˈkɔːs/ 28
court /ˈkɔːt/ 49
cousin /ˈkɔzn/ 10
cow /ˈkɔʊ/ 24
crab /ˈkræb/ 24
crazy /ˈkreɪzi/ 70
cream adj /ˈkrɛm/ 18
cream n /ˈkrɛm/ 23
credit card /ˈkredɪt kɔrd/ 19, 20
croissant /ˈkrɔːsɛ̃/ 28
cross out /kros ˈəʊt/ Starter
crossing as in pedestrian crossing /ˈkrosɪŋ/ 32
crowded /ˈkraʊdɪd/ 35
cucumber /ˈkjuːkəmbə(r)/ 25
cup /ˈkæp/ 39
cupboard /ˈkʌbɔrd/ 39
curly /ˈkɜːlɪ/ 13
currency /ˈkɜːrənsi/ 54, 59
curtain /ˈkɜːtn/ 41
cushion /ˈkʌʃn/ 41
customer /ˈkʌstəmə(r)/ 19, 23
customs /ˈkʌstəms/ 56
cut (= make a wound) /kət/ 23
cut (= remove) /kət/ 46
Czech /tʃɛk/ 4
Czech Republic /tʃɛk rɪˈpleɪbl/ 4
DVD player /dɪ ˈviː dɪ plɛr(r)/ 41
dad /dæd/ 10
damp /dæmp/ 21
dance /dɑːns/ 11
dangerous /ˈdændʒərəs/ 35
dark /dɑːk/ 13, 18
data /deɪtə/ 47
date /deɪt/ 3, 47, 74
date of birth /deɪt əv ˈbɜːθ/ 9
daughter /dəˈtɑː(r)/ 10
day /deɪt/ 3, 45
Europe /juərəp/ 4
even /'i:vən/ 2, 60, 75
evening /'i:vən/ 53
event /'event/ 53
ever /'evər/ 17, 29
exactly /ɪɡˌzæktlɪ/ 8
exams /ɪɡˈzɛmz/ 42
ex-boyfriend /ˌɛksˌbɔɪˈfrend/ 15
excellent /ˌɛksˈɛlənt/ 68
exchange rate /ˈɪkʃər ˌreɪt/ 59
excited /iksˈətɪd/ 16
exciting /ˈɪkˈsɛtɪŋ/ 52
excuse me /ɪkˈskjuːz miː/ 29, 31
ex-girlfriend /ˌɛksˈɡɜːflˈfrend/ 15
ex-husband /ˌɛksˈhʌzbənd/ 15
exit /ˈɛksɪt/ 33
expensive /ˌɪkˈspensɪv/ 19
explain /ɪkˈsplɛn/ 7
extremely /ɪkˈstrɪməli/ 71
ex-wife /ˌɛksˌwaɪf/ 15
eye /aɪ/ 12

face /feɪs/ 12
facilities /ˈfeɪsəlitiz/ 55
fact /fækt/ 35
factory /ˈfæktəri/ 45
fail an exam /feɪl ən ɪɡˈzɛm/ 42
fall over /fɔːl əˈvaʊə(r)/ 11, 73
false /fɔːls, fəls/ Starter
family name /ˈfæməli ˈneɪm/ 8
family tree /ˈfæməli ˈtriː/ 10
famous /ˈfærəmz/ 34, 51
fantastic /ˈfæntəstɪk/ 48
far /fɑː(r)/ 32, 62
Far East /ˈfɑːr ˈɛst/ 4
fare /fɛə(r)/ 20, 30
farm /fɔːm/ 36
farmer /fɑːˈmɛr/ 36
fast /fɑːst/ 30, 47
fasten /fɑːstn/ 56
fat /fæt/ 13
father /fɑːðə(r)/ 10
favourite /fəˈvɔːrɪt/ 48
feel /fiːl/ 16, 22
feet /fiːt/ 12
few /fjuː/ in a few /fjuː/ 36
field /fiːld/ 36
fill /fiːl/ 37
filet /ˈfɪlət/ 28
film /fɪlm/ 17, 52
final score /ˈfænəl ˈskɔːr/ 49
finally /ˈfænəli/ 78
find /fɪnd/ 54
find out /fɪnd ˈaʊt/ 53, 73
fine (= in good health) /fain/ 60
line (= OK) /ˈfæn/ 60, 63
fingers /ˈfɪŋəz/ 12
finish /ˈfɪnɪʃ/ 17, 63
fireplace /ˈfɜːrəpleɪs/ 41
first adv /ˈfɜːst/ 78
first adj /ˈfɜːst/ 8
first half /ˈfɜːst hɔːf/ 49
first of all /ˈfɜːst əv ˈɔl/ 78
firstly /ˈfɜːstli/ 78
fish /fɪʃ/ 24
fishing /ˈfɪʃɪŋ/ 50
lit /lɪt/ 19
flat adj /flæt/ 69
flat n /flæt/ 38
flatmate /ˈflættmeɪt/ 15
flight /flaɪt/ 54, 56
flight closed /ˈflaɪt ˈkloʊzd/ 56
floor (= level of a building) /flɔː(r)/ 38
floor (= surface you walk on) /flɔː(r)/ 41
flower /ˈflaʊə(r)/ 36
flower arranging /ˈflaʊər ˈærrəndɪŋ/ 50
flu /fluo/ 22
fly /flai/ 57
fog /fɒg/ 21
foggy /ˈfɒɡi/ 21
folder (= for holding papers) /ˈfɔːldə(r)/ 5
folder (= on a computer) /ˈfɔːldə(r)/ 46
foot /fʊt/ 12
football /ˈfʊtbɔːl/ 49
for /fɔː(r)/ 75
for a while /fər əˈwaɪl/ 22
forecast as in weather forecast /ˈfɔːkɑːst/ 53
foreign /ˈfɔrən/ 54
forename /ˈfɔːrəm/ 9
forget /fəˈɡet/ 67
fork /fɔːk/ 28
fortunately /fəˈtʃənəli/ 43
forward v /fɔːrˈwɔːd/ 47
France /fref/ 4
free /friː/ 20
freezer /ˈfrɪzə(r)/ 39
freezing /ˈfrɪznɪŋ/ 16, 21
French /ˈfræŋk/ 4
fresh /frɛʃ/ 25
fresh food /fref ˈfjuːd/ 36
fridge /frendʒ/ 39
fried /frɪd/ 28
friend as in best/closest friend /frend/ 15
friendly /ˈfrendli/ 14
frightened /ˈfrɪtənd/ 16
frightening /ˈfrɪtənɪŋ/ 52
from (= origin) /frəm, frəm/ 4
from (= time) /frəm, frəm/ 45
front door /frɔːnt ˈdɔː(r)/ 38
frozen /ˈfrɔːzn/ 25
frying pan /ˈfrænɪŋ ˈpæn/ 39
full /fol/ 37, 39
full-time /fol tam/ 45
fun /fan/ 14, 48
funny /fani/ 14, 52
furniture /fstorm(r)/ 41

GP (general practitioner)
/dz:i: 'pi, dz3enral prak't(jana(r)/ 22
gallery as in art gallery /'gelari/ 58
game /gam/ 49
garage /gærea, 'gerid3/ 38
garden /gædn/ 38
gardening /gaidnigi/ 50
garlic /gaidl/ 25
gate /get/ 56
gents /d3ents/ 33
g (geography /dz3'grafi/ 42
German /d33man/ 4
Germany /d33mani/ 4
get (= arrive) /get/ 30, 31, 80
get (= become) /get/ 16, 80
get (= buy) /get/ 80
get (= fetch) /get/ 69
get (= obtain) /get/ 42, 80
get (= receive) /get/ 47, 80
get a grade /get a 'greid/ 42
get a job /get a 'd3ob/ 43
get an email /get an 'i:meil/ 47
get divorced /get div'zest/ 10
get dressed /get 'drest/ 17
get lost /get 'lost/ 58
get married /get 'merid/ 10, 15
get off /get 'of/ 11, 29, 30, 56
get on /get 'on/ 11, 29, 30, 56, 73
get on with someone /get 'on wi da samwan/ 15
to know someone /get to 'n3o samwan/ 15
to get to work /get to 'wa:k/ 17
get up /get 'ap/ 17
girlfriend /g3lfr3nd/ 10, 15
give /giv/ 12, 15, 72
give someone a hand /giv samwan a 'hend/ 66
give something up /giv samfin 'ap/ 73
glass /gla:s/ 28
glasses /gla:ssiz/ 18
gloves /glavz/ 18
go (= do something) /gao/ 17, 22, 50
go (= move or travel) /gao/ 31, 33
go ahead /gao a 'hed/ 63
go and see /gao an 'siz/ 22
go back /gao 'bæk/ 73
go down /gao 'daun/ 76
go for a walk /gao for a 'wa:k/ 57
go on a (guided) tour /gao on a (gaidid) 'too(r)/ 58
go online /gao on'tain/ 47
go out /gao 'aot/ 17, 73
go out for (a meal/a drink)
/gao 'aot fa(r)/ 64, 73
go out with someone /gao 'aot wi da samwan/ 15
go sightseeing /gao 'saitsi3n/ 58
go to primary school /gao to 'primari skul/ 42
go up /gao 'ap/ 73
goal /gaul/ 49
good afternoon /gord a:f3num/ 60
get good at something /g3d at samfin/ 42
good evening /g3d 3vnn/ 60
good-looking /g3d 'lo:k3n/ 13
good luck /g3d lak/ 61
good morning /g3d mornin/ 60
good to meet you /g3d to 'mi:t ju:/ 60
goodbye /g3d 3bai/ 60
goodnight /g3d 'nait/ 60, 61
grade /greid/ 42
graduate /gred3juat/ 43
graduate v /gred3jut/ 43
grams /'greims/ 26
granddaughter /'grænd3ta(r)/ 10
grandfather /'grændfa:d3a(r)/ 10
grandmother /'grændmo:d3a(r)/ 10
grandson /'grændsan/ 10
grapes /'greips/ 25
grass /gras/ 36
great /gret/ 55, 64, 65
Great Britain /gret britn/ 4
Greece /'grisis/ 4
Greek /'gri:k/ 4
green /'grin/ 18
grey /'grey/ 13, 18
grilled /'grid/ 28
ground floor /'graund 'fl3:3(r)/ 38
group /grup/ 51
grow /grou/ 36
grow up /grou 'ap/ 73
guests /gests/ 55
guide /gaid/ 58
guidebook /'gaidbok/ 58
guitar /'gita(r)/ 50, 51
gym /d3um/ 17, 50, 55

hair /hea(r)/ 12, 40
hairdresser /'headresa(r)/ 44
half /'haf/ 26, 49
half past /'haf past/ 2
half price /'haf 'praiz/ 20
half-time /'haf 't3am/ 49
ham /h3m/ 24
hand (= part of the body) /h3nd/ 12
hand as in give someone a hand /h3nd/ 66
hand luggage /h3nd lag'd3/ 56
handbag /h3ndb3g/ 18
hands as in shake hands /h3ndz/ 60
happy /ˈhepi/ 16
happy birthday /ˈhepi ˈbɜːθdeɪ/ 61
happy Christmas /ˈhepi ˈkrɪsməs/ 61
happy New Year /ˈhepi ˈnjuː/ 61
hard adv /ˈhɑrd/ 42
hard copy /ˈhɑrd ˈkɒpi/ 46
hard drive /ˈhɑrd ˈdrɑiv/ 46
hardly ever /ˈhɑrdli ˈɛvə(r)/ 17
hat /hɑt/ 18
hate /hæt/ 48
have (= do something) /hæv/ 17, 40, 56, 69
have (= eat/drink) /hæv/ 28
have a baby /hæv ə ˈbebi/ 15
have a seat /hæv ə ˈsi:t/ 27
have got /hæv ˈgɒt/ 10, 13, 21, 26, 79, 80
have got to /hæv ˈgɒt ˈtʊt, ˈtɒ/ 60
have to /hæv ˈtʊ, ˈtɒ/ 45
head /hɛd/ 12
headache /ˈhɛdeɪk/ 22
healthy /ˈhɛlθɪ/ 36
hear /hɪə(r)/ 53
heating as in central heating /ˈhɪtnɪŋ/ 55
heavy /ˈhɛvi/ 21
height /hɪt/ 13
hello /ˈheləʊ/ 60
help /help/ 19, 66
helpful /ˈhɛlpfl/ 55, 70
hi, hi there /hɪ, hɪ ˈðeə(r)/ 60
high /hай/ 34, 45
hill /hɪl/ 36
hire /hайə(r)/ 54
historic /ˈhɪstrɪk/ 35
history /ˈhɪstə(r)i/ 42
hob /hɔb/ 39
hobby /ˈhɒbi/ 50
hockey as in ice hockey /ˈhɒki/ 49
hold /hɒld/ 11
holiday /ˈhɒldeɪ/ 54, 61, 79
home /hɑʊm/ 38
homework /ˈhɑʊmwaɪk/ 39, 42
hope /hɑʊp/ 60
horrible /ˈhɒrəbl/ 14, 19
horror /ˈhɔrə(r)/ 52
horse /hɔz/ 36
hospital /ˈhɒspɪtəl/ 45
hot /hɒt/ 21
hours /ˈauəz/ 45
house /hɑʊz/ 38
househusband /ˈhaʊʃæzbænd/ 44
housewife /ˈhaʊʃwɑːf/ 44
How about you? /hɑʊ ə ˈjʊə/ 62
How are things? /hɑʊ ə ˈθɪŋz/ 60
How are you? /hɑʊ ə ˈju:/ 60
How do you do? /hɑʊ ˈdə ˈdu:/ 60
How far /hɑʊ ˈfɑː(r)/ 32, 62
How long (= length) /hɑʊ ˈlɒŋ/ 13
How long (= time) /hɑʊ ˈlɒŋ/ 29, 62
how many /hɑʊ ˈmeni/ 26, 62
how much /hɑʊ ˈmʌtʃ/ 13, 26, 45, 59
how often /hɑʊ ˈɒfn, ˈəfn/ 62
how old /hɑʊ ˈəʊld/ 8, 10
however /hɑʊˈeɪvə(r)/ 77
hundred /ˈhʌndrəd/ 1
Hungarian /ˈhʌŋgəri/ 4
hungry /ˈhʌŋgrɪ/ 16
hurt /hɜːt/ 22
husband /ˈhæzbænd/ 10
hypermartket /ˈhaʊpɜːmækt/ 37
ICT (information communication technology) /ˈaɪ sɪˈtiː (ɪnˈfəmeɪʃn kæmənjuˈnɪkəʃn tekˈnɒlədʒi)/ 42
IT (information technology) /ˈaɪ tɪː (ɪnˈfəmeɪʃn tekˈnɒlədʒi)/ 42
ice /aɪs/ 21
ice cream /aɪs ˈkrɪm/ 28
ice hockey /aɪs hɒki/ 49
icon /ˈaɪkɒn/ 46
icy /aɪsɪ/ 21
I'd like /aɪd ˈlaɪk/ 26, 27
I'd like to /aɪd ˈlaɪk ˈtʊt, ˈtɒ/ 55
I'd love to /aɪd ˈlaʊv ˈtʊt, ˈtɒ/ 64
idea /aɪˈdɪə/ 65
if /ɪf/ 78
ill as in be/feel ill /ɪl/ 16, 22
I'll leave it/them /ɪl ˈliːv ɪt, ˈðəm/ 19
I'm afraid /aɪm əˈfraid/ 55, 63, 64
I'm afraid not /aɪm əˈfraid ˈnɒt/ 55
impossible /ɪmˈpɒsəbl/ 70
in (= place) /ɪn/ 76
in (= taking part) /ɪn/ 52
in (= time) /ɪn/ 2, 74
in as in Who's in it? /ɪn/ 52
in a minute /ɪn ə ˈmɪnɪt/ 75
in advance /ɪn ədˈvɑːns/ 30
in front of /ɪn ˈfrɔnt əv/ 76
in love /ɪn ˈlʌv/ 16
in (my twenties, etc.) /ɪn (mai ˈtwɛntɪz)/ 13
in order to /ɪn ˈɔːdər tə/ 77
in the north /ɪn ˈnɔːθ/ 34
in the paper /ɪn ˈpeɪpə(r)/ 53
inbox /ˈɪnbɒks/ 47
included as in included in the price
/mɪˈklʊd/ 55
indefinite article /ɪnˈdɛfɪnət ˈɑːtɪkl/ 6
India /ˈɪndɪə/ 4
recommend /ˈrekəmend/ 55, 62
red /red/ 18.
refuse /riˈfjuːz/ 66
regular /ˈregjələ(r)/ 6
relationship /ˈreləʃənʃi-/ 15
relative /ˈrelətiv/ 10
relax /ˈrelæks/ 57
relaxed /ˈrelæksd/ 14
remember /ˈrɛməmbə(r)/ 7. 67
rent /rent/ 57
repair /rɪˈpeə(r)/ 50
reply /rɪˈplaɪ/ 47
report /rɪˈpɔːt/ 45
reporter /rɪˈpɔːtə(r)/ 43. 53
research /rɪˈsərچ/ 43
reserve /rɛzərv/ 30
resort /rəˈzɔːrt/ 57
rest as in have a rest /rɛst/ 79
results /rɪˈzʌltz/ 42
retired /rɪˈtaʊəd/ 44
return /rɪˈtɜrn/ 30
review /rɪˈvaɪər/ 52
rice /raɪs/ 26
rich /rɪtʃ/ 70
ride /raɪd/ 11. 36
right (= correct) /raɪt/ 7
right (= not left) /raɪt/ 31
right (= OK) /raɪt/ 55
ring v (of a bell) /raɪŋ/ 29
ring v (= phone) /rɪŋ/ 69
ring someone back /rɪŋ ˈsæmən ˈbæk/ 69
rink /rɪŋk/ 49
ripen /rɪp/ 26
river /ˈrɪvə(r)/ 34
road as in main road /rəʊd/ 32
road sign /rəʊd ˈsæn/ 32
roast /rəʊst/ 28
roll /rəʊl/ 27
romantic /rəʊˈmæntɪk/ 52
room service /ˈrʊm ˈsəːvɪs/ 55
roundabout /ˈrəʊndəˈbɑːt/ 32
route /rʊt/ 29
rubber /ˈrʌbə(r)/ 5
rubbish /ˈrʌbɪʃ/ 38
rubbish bin /ˈrʌbɪʃ ˈbaɪn/ 39
ruddy /ˈrʌdi/ 41
rug /rʌɡ/ 49
rugby /ˈrʌɡbɪ/ 49
ruler /ˈruːlə(r)/ 5
run n /rʌn/ 79
run v /rʌn/ 11. 29
rush hour /rʌʃ ˈhɔʊər/ 32
Russia /ˈrʌʃə/ 4
Russian /ˈrʌʃn/ 4
sad /sæd/ 16
safe /sef/ 35
salad as in mixed salad /ˈsælad/ 28
salary /ˈseɪləri/ 45
sale /seil/ 33
salmon /ˈsælmon/ 24
salt /sɔlt, sɔt/ 28
same /seɪm/ Starter
same as in the same to you /seɪm/ 61
sandals /ˈsændəlz/ 18
sandwich /ˈsændwɪtʃ, ’sændwɪð/ 27
satellite TV /ˌseɪtəl ˈtiːˈviː/ 55
say /seɪ/ 7
scales /ˈskeɪlz/ 56, 59
scared /ˈskərd/ 16
scarf /ˈskɑːf/ 18
school /skools/ 42
score n, v /ˈskɔːr(r)/ 49
Scotland /ˈskɔːltənd/ 4
screen /skrɪn/ 46
sea /sɪə/ 57
seafood /ˈsɪːfʊd/ 24
search engine /ˈsɜːtʃ ˈendʒɪn/ 47
season /ˈsiːzn/ 3
seat /sɪt/ 27. 30
seat belt /ˈsɛt bɛlt/ 56
secondary school /sɛkˈændri ˈskjuːl/ 42
secretary /ˈsekrətəri/ 44
see (= meet or visit) /si: / 15. 60
see (= watch) /si:/ 17. 52. 53
See you later /siː ˈjuː ˈlɛt(r)/ 60. 75
self-employed /ˈself ɪmˈploʊd/ 44
sell /sɛl/ 20
send /sɛnd/ 45. 47. 59. 69
serious /ˈsɛriəs/ 14
service as in room service /ˈsəːvɪs/ 55
set /set/ 49
shake hands /ʃeiks ˈhændz/ 60
shall I (= offer) /ʃɛl aɪ, ʃəl ˈaɪ/ 66
shall we? (= suggestion) /ʃɛl wɛ, ʃəl ˈwi:/ 65
shame /ʃeɪm/ 55
shampoo /ʃəmˈpʊə/ 40
share /ʃeə(r)/ 14
sharpener as in pencil sharpener /ˈʃɑːpənə(r)/ 5
shave /ʃɛv/ 40
sheep /ʃiːp/ 24
sheet /ʃiːt/ 40
shelf /ʃelf/ 39
shir t /ʃa:t/ 18
shoe /ʃu:/ 18
shopping /ˈʃu:tn/ 50
shop /ʃɔp/ 37
shop assistant /ˈʃɔp əˈsɪstənt/ 19, 44
shopping as in do the shopping
/ˈʃɔpɪŋ/ 17, 39
shopping centre /ˈʃɔpɪŋ ˈsentə(r)/ 37
short /ʃɔt/ 13, 19
shorts /ʃɔts/ 57
should /ʃəld/ 22, 58
shoulder /ˈʃəʊldə(r)/ 12
shower n (in the bathroom) /ˈʃauə(r)/ 17, 40, 55
shower n (= rain) /ˈʃauə(r)/ 21
shut /ʃʌt/ 11, 62
shy /ʃaɪ/ 14
sick /sɪk/ 22
sightseeing /ˈsaɪtsiːɪŋ/ 58
sign /sain/ 59
sign as in road sign /saɪn/ 32
signature /ˈsɪɡneɪtʃə(r)/ 9
since /sɪns/ 75
sing /sɪŋ/ 50
singer /ˈsɪŋə(r)/ 50, 51
single n (= song) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 51
single n (= ticket) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 30
single adj (= for one) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 40, 55
single adj (= not married) /ˈsɪŋgl/ 8
singles chart /ˈsɪŋgəlz tʃaːt/ 51
singular noun /ˈsɪŋɡəl nəʊn/ 6
sink /sɪŋk/ 39
sister /ˈsɪstə(r)/ 10
sister-in-law /ˈsɪstər ɪn lɔː/ 10
sit down /ˈsɪt ˈdaʊn/ 11, 73
size /saɪz/ 19, 35
skiing /ˈskiːɪŋ/ 50
skirt /ˈskɔːt/ 18
sky /skaɪ/ 36
sleep /slɪp/ 17, 61
slim /slɪm/ 13
slow /slow/ 30, 47
small /smaʊl/ 19
smart /smɑːrt/ 19
smoking as in no smoking /ˈsmɑːkɪŋ/ 33
snow n. v /ˈsnəʊ/ 21
so /soʊ/ 77
so as in an hour or so /soʊ/ 57
soap /ˈsəʊp/ 40
soap (= soap opera) /ˈsəʊp/ 53
sociable /ˈsəʊʃəbl/ 14
sock /sɒk/ 18
sofa /ˈsəʊfa/ 41
software engineer /ˈsoʊtweər ˈendʒɪnɪə(r)/ 43
soldier /ˈsɔldʒə(r)/ 44
some /ˌsʌm, ˈsæm/ 53
some more /ˌsʌm ˈmɔː(r)/ 28
something /ˈsʌmθɪŋ/ 23
sometimes /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ 17
son /sɔn/ 10
song /sɔŋ/ 50
soon /sʊn/ 60, 75
sore /soʊ(r)/ 22
sorry /ˈsɔrɪ/ 63, 64, 67
sounds /ˈsaʊndz/ 64
soup /ˈsʊp/ 28
south /saʊθ/ 34, 35
South Korea /saʊθ ˈkærəˌriə/ 4
south-east /saʊθ ˈɪst/ 35
south-west /saʊθ ˈwest/ 35
soy sauce /soʊ ˈsoʊs/ 28
Spain /ˈspeɪn/ 4
Spanish /ˈspeɪnɪʃ/ 4
sparkling /ˈspɑːklɪŋ/ 28
speak /spik/ 69
speaker /ˈspiːkə(r)/ 46
speaking /ˈspiːkɪŋ/ 69
speed limit /ˈspɪd ˈlɪmɪt/ 32
spell /spel/ 7
spend (money) /spend (ˈmʌn) 20
spend (time) /spend (ˈtaun) 10, 45, 50
split up /spɪt ˈʌp/ 15
spoon /ˈspuːn/ 28
sporty /ˈspɔːrti/ 14
spring /ˈsprɪŋ/ 3
square /ˈskwɔːr/ 35
squid /ˈskwɪd/ 24
staff /stæf/ 55
stairs /ˈsteɪəz/ 38
stalls /ˈstɔːlz/ 37
stamp /stɛmp/ 59
stand up /stænd ˈʌp/ 11, 73
star /ˈstɑːr/ 52
start /stɑːrt/ 42
starter /ˈstɑːtə(r)/ 28
state school /ˈsteɪt ˈskูล/ 42
station as in petrol station /ˈsteɪʃən/ 32
station as in railway station /ˈsteɪʃən/ 31
statue /ˈsteɪʃə/ 35
status as in marital status /ˈsteɪtəs/ 9
stay (= live for a short period) n, v /steɪ/ 55
stay at school /ˈsteɪ ət ˈskูล/ 42
stay in bed /ˈsteɪ ɪn ˈbed/ 22
steak /steɪk/ 28
steps /ˈsteɪps/ 38
stick /stɪk/ 49
stick as in memory stick /ˈstɪk/ 46
still adj /stɪl/ 28
still adv /ˈstɪl/ 71
stomach /ˈstɒmək/ 12
stomach-ache /ˈstɒmək ˈeɪk/ 22
stop as in bus stop, last stop /stop/ 29

WORD LIST 251
store as in department store /sɛə(r)/ 37
store /stɔr/ 21
storm /stɔrm/ 21
summer /ˈsʌmər/ 52
study /ˈstʌdi/ 38
subject /ˈsʌbdʒekt/ 42
suggestion /səˈdʒestʃn/ 65
sunny /ˈsʌni/ 21
suit /sju:t/ 18
suitcase /ˈsu:tkεs/ 54, 56
supermarket /ˈsuːpərmɑːkɪt/ 37
sure /ʃʊə(r)/ 7, 65, 68
sweater /ˈswetə(r)/ 18
sweat /swi:t/ 25
Switzerland /ˈswɪtsələnd/ 4
sun /sʌn/ 21
sunglasses /ˈsʌngləˌɡɛzlz/ 18
sung /swiŋ/ 79
Swiss /ˈswɪs/ 4
summer /ˈsʌmə(r)/ 3
take (= buy) /teik/ 19
take (= carry) /teik/ 63
take (= have a certain size) /teik/ 19
take (= use a form of transport) /teik/ 30, 32, 57
take a tablet /ˈteibl/ 23
take out an exam /teik ən ɪɡˈzɛm/ 42
take away /teik əˈweɪ/ 27
take off (= leave the ground) /ˈteik əˈf, ˈteik əv/ 56, 73
take off (= remove) /teik əˈf/ 40, 73
take out, something out /ˈteik əˈaut, ˈteik sʌmˈbɪŋ əˈaut/ 39
take photos /ˈtei pokəz/ 58
take the first turning /ˈteik ðə ˈfɜːst tɜrnɪŋ/ 31
tall /tɔl/ 13
tap /tæp/ 39
tart /tɑːt/ 28
taste /teist/ 25
taste as in business studies /ˈstʌdɪz/ 43
studies /ˈstʌdiəz/ 43
stupid /ˈstjuːpɪd/ 14
stressed /ˈstreʊst/ 70
strawberry /ˈstrɔːbəri/ 25
strong /streŋk/ 70
straight /streɪt/ 31
straight on /ˈstreɪtən/ 31
strong as in department store /sɛə(r)/ 37
subject as in business studies /ˈstʌdiəz/ 43
studies as in department store /ˈstʌdiəz/ 43
summer /ˈsʌmə(r)/ 3
strange /streɪn/ 70
suggestion /səˈdʒestʃn/ 65
suit /sju:t/ 18
suitcase /ˈsu:tkεs/ 54, 56
supermarket /ˈsuːpərmɑːkɪt/ 37
sure /ʃʊə(r)/ 7, 65, 68
sweater /ˈswetə(r)/ 18
sweat /swi:t/ 25
Switzerland /ˈswɪtsələnd/ 4
summer /ˈsʌmə(r)/ 3
take (= buy) /teik/ 19
take (= carry) /teik/ 63
take (= have a certain size) /teik/ 19
take (= use a form of transport) /teik/ 30, 32, 57
take a tablet /ˈteibl/ 23
take out an exam /teik ən ɪɡˈzɛm/ 42
take away /teik əˈweɪ/ 27
take off (= leave the ground) /ˈteik əˈf, ˈteik əv/ 56, 73
take off (= remove) /teik əˈf/ 40, 73
take out, something out /ˈteik əˈaut, ˈteik sʌmˈbɪŋ əˈaut/ 39
take photos /ˈtei pokəz/ 58
take the first turning /ˈteik ðə ˈfɜːst tɜrnɪŋ/ 31
tall /tɔl/ 13
tap /tæp/ 39
tart /tɑːt/ 28
taste /teist/ 25
taxi driver /ˈtæksi dɹəvə(r)/ 44
tea /ˈtiː/ 27
teacher /ˈtiːtʃə(r)/ 44
team /ˈtiːm/ 49
technology as in design and technology /tekˈnɒldʒɪ/ 42
technology as in IT, ICT /tekˈnɒldʒɪ/ 42
teenager /ˈtiːnədʒə(r)/ 13
teens /ˈtiːnz/ 13
teach /tiːtʃ/ 17, 40
television /ˈtɛlvɪʃən, ˈtɛlvɪʃən/ 41
temperature /ˈtɛmprətʃə(r)/ 22
tennis /ˈtɛnɪs/ 17, 49
tennis as in table tennis /ˈtɛnɪs/ 50
term /ˈtɜːm/ 43
terminal /ˈtɜːrnɪl/ 56
terrible /ˈterəbl/ 36, 42, 79
text v. n /ˈtekst/ 69
Thai /tʰaɪ/ 4
Thailand /ˈthɔɪlənd/ 4
take away /ˈteik əˈweɪ/ 27
take off (= leave the ground) /ˈteik əˈf, ˈteik əv/ 56, 73
take off (= remove) /teik əˈf/ 40, 73
take out, something out /ˈteik əˈaut, ˈteik sʌmˈbɪŋ əˈaut/ 39
take photos /ˈtei pokəz/ 58
take the first turning /ˈteik ðə ˈfɜːst tɜrnɪŋ/ 31
tall /tɔl/ 13
tap /tæp/ 39
tart /tɑːt/ 28
taste /teist/ 25
taxi driver /ˈtæksi dɹəvə(r)/ 44
tea /ˈtiː/ 27
teacher /ˈtiːtʃə(r)/ 44
team /ˈtiːm/ 49
technology as in design and technology /tekˈnɒldʒɪ/ 42
technology as in IT, ICT /tekˈnɒldʒɪ/ 42
teenager /ˈtiːnədʒə(r)/ 13
teens /ˈtiːnz/ 13
teach /tiːtʃ/ 17, 40
television /ˈtɛlvɪʃən, ˈtɛlvɪʃən/ 41
temperature /ˈtɛmprətʃə(r)/ 22
tennis /ˈtɛnɪs/ 17, 49
tennis as in table tennis /ˈtɛnɪs/ 50
term /ˈtɜːm/ 43
terminal /ˈtɜːrnɪl/ 56
terrible /ˈterəbl/ 36, 42, 79
text v. n /ˈtekst/ 69
Thai /tʰaɪ/ 4
Thailand /ˈthɔɪlənd/ 4
take away /ˈteik əˈweɪ/ 27
take off (= leave the ground) /ˈteik əˈf, ˈteik əv/ 56, 73
take off (= remove) /teik əˈf/ 40, 73
take out, something out /ˈteik əˈaut, ˈteik sʌmˈbɪŋ əˈaut/ 39
take photos /ˈtei pokəz/ 58
take the first turning /ˈteik ðə ˈfɜːst tɜrnɪŋ/ 31
tall /tɔl/ 13
tap /tæp/ 39
tart /tɑːt/ 28

tired /ˈtaɪd/ 16

tissue /ˈtʃuːs/ 23, 40

toasted sandwich /ˈtoʊstəd ˈsænwɪdʃ/ 27
toe /toʊ/ 12
together /ˈtəɡəðə(r)/ 10, 15
toilet /ˈtɒliːt/ 33, 40

toasted /ˈtɑːstɪd/ 7

tomato /ˈtəmətəʊ/ 25
tomorrow /ˈtəmɔrəʊ/ 75
tongue as in mother tongue /ˈtɑːŋ/ 9
too (= also) /ˈtuː/ 61, 77

too (= more than is good) /ˈtuː/ 19
tooth /ˈtuːθ/ 12

toothache /ˈtuːθeɪtʃ/ 22
toothbrush /ˈtuːθbɜːʃ/ 40
toothpaste /ˈtuːθpæst/ 40
top (= clothes) /ˈtɒp/ 18
top (= highest part) /ˈtɒp/ 38, 49
touch /ˈtʌtʃ/ 11
tour /ˈtʊər/ 58

tourist /ˌtʊərɪst/ 55
towel /ˈtaʊəl/ 40
town /ˈtaʊn/ 35
town centre /ˈtaʊn ˈsɛntə(r)/ 38

traffic /ˈtræfɪk/ 32

traffic jam /ˈtræfɪk dʒæm/ 32

traffic light /ˈtræfɪk lɑːt/ 32

train /ˈtreɪn/ 30

train driver /ˈtreɪn ˈdrævə(r)/ 44

trainers /ˈtreɪnəz/ 18

transport as in public transport /ˈtrænspɔːt/ 36

traveller’s cheque /trəˈvɛlərz ˈtʃek/ 59

travelling /ˈtrævəlɪŋ/ 50

tree /trɪ/ 36

tree as in family tree /ˈtrɪ/ 10

trolley /ˈtrɒli/ 37, 56

trouser /ˈtrʌsər/ 18

true /truː/ 23

try /ˈtraɪ/ 23

try on /ˈtraɪ ʌn/ 19, 73

t-shirt /ˈtʃɜːt/ 18

Turkey /ˈtærki/ 4

Turkish /ˈtɜːrki/ 4

turn something off /ˈtɜːrn ˈsʌmθɪŋ ˈɒf/ 39

turn something on /ˈtɜːrn ˈsʌmθɪŋ ˈɒn/ 11, 39, 73

turning /ˈtɜːrnɪŋ/ 31

twice /ˈtwais/ 17

twin room /ˈtwɪn rʊm/ 55

type /taɪp/ 45

typical /ˈtɪpɪkl/ 58

UK (United Kingdom) /ˈjuː ˈkeɪ/ 4

USA (United States of America) /ˈjuː əˈsiː/ 4

ugly /ˈʌɡli/ 13

umbrella /ˈʌmbrelə/ 18

unable /ˈənˈeɪbl/ 51

can /ˈkæn/ 10

car /ˈkær/ 19

casino /ˈkæsɪnəʊ/ 38

case /kɑːs/ 42

case of /ˈkeɪs əv/ 33

case study /ˈkeɪs Studi/ 57

cash /kæʃ/ 42

catch /ˈkætʃ/ 14

collapsible /ˈkɔləˌsɪbəl/ 38

cold /kəld/ 42

closure /ˈkloʊʒər/ 38

comfortable /ˈkʌmətə(b)əl/ 19

under (= less than) /ˈʌndə(r)/ 26, 35

under (= position) /ˈʌndə(r)/ 76

undergraduate /ˈʌndəɡrədʒuət/ 43

underline /ˈʌndərˈlaɪn/ 25

unemployed /ˈʌnəmplɔɪd/ 44

unfortunately /ənˈfʌtʃərətli/ 43

unfriendly /ənˈfrɛndli/ 14

unhappy /ənˈhæpi/ 16

uniform /ˈjuːnɪfɔrm/ 42

United Kingdom (UK) /ˈjuːnɪtɪd ˈkɪŋdəm/ 4

United States of America (USA) /ˈjuːnɪtɪd ˈstɛts əˌvəmərɪkə/ 4

university /juːnɪˈvɜːsəti/ 42

unnecessary /ənˈnesəsəri/ 70

untidy /ənˈtaɪdi/ 14

until /ənˈtɪl/ 42, 75

unusual /ənˈjuːʒuəl/ 70

up /ʌp/ 76

upset /ʌpˈset/ 16

upstairs /ʌpˈsteəz/ 38

use /juːz/ 40, 47

useful /ˈjuːsful/ 70

useless /ˈjuːsles/ 70

usually /ˈjuːʒuəli/ 17

utility room /ˈjuːtɪləti rʊm/ 38

vacancies as in no vacancies /ˈveɪkənsts/ 33

valley /ˈvæli/ 36

various /ˈvɛəriəs/ 50

verb /ˈvɜːb/ 6

very /ˈvɛri/ 19, 48, 60, 66

vet /ˈvet/ 44

views /ˈvjuːz/ 38

village /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ 35

vinegar /ˈvɪnɡ̊ə(r)/ 28

violent /ˈvɪlənt/ 52

violon /ˈviːlən/ 51

violonist /ˈviːlənɪst/ 51

visa /ˈvɪzə/ 54

visit /ˈvɪzɪt/ 47, 58

volleyball /ˈvɒlɪbɔːl/ 49

wages /ˈweɪdʒz/ 45

waist /ˈweɪst/ 12

wait /ˈweɪt/ 30

wake up /ˈweɪk ʌp/ 73

Wales /ˈweɪlz/ 4

walk n /ˈwɔk/ 17, 57, 79

walk v /ˈwɔk/ 6, 11

wall /ˈwɔl/ 41

want /ˈwɒnt/ 64, 66

war /ˈwɔː(r)/ 53
war film /'wɔ: fɪlm/ 52
wardrobe /'wɔ:draʊb/ 40
wash n /'wɒʃ/ 40, 79
wash v /'wɔʃ/ 40
washbasin /'wɔʃbeɪsn/ 40
washing machine /'wɔʃməʃi:n/ 39
washing-up /'wɔʃəp/ 39
washbasin /'wɔʃbæsl/ 40
washing machine /'wɔʃəməʃi:n/ 39
washing-up /'wɔʃəp/ 39
waste /'weɪst/ 68
watch n /'wɔtʃ/ 18
watch v /'wɔtʃ/ 50, 53
water as in mineral water /'wɔtə(r)/ 28
way /'weɪ/ 31, 70
way in /'weɪ in/ 33
way out /'weɪ aʊt/ 33
weak /'wi:k/ 70
wear /'weə(r)/ 18, 40
weather forecast /'weðə fəkərəst/ 53
web address /'webədəs/ 47
webcam /'webkæm/ 46
website /'websit/ 47
week /'wi:k/ 3, 17, 45, 55, 75
weekday /'wi:k'deɪ/ 17
weekend /'wi:k'end/ 17, 61, 75, 79
weigh /'weɪ/ 13
weight /'weɪt/ 13
welcome /'welkəm/ 61
well (= in a good way) /wel/ 15, 42, 61
well (= not ill) /wel/ 16, 22, 60
well (used when you feel uncertain) /wel/ 65
well as in as well /wel/ 77
well done (= congratulations) /wel 'dən/ 61
well done (= cooked for a long time) /wel 'dən/ 28
well known /wel 'nəun/ 51
west /'west/ 34, 35
wet /'weɪt/ 21
what (used in questions) /wɒt/ 21, 27
what about? /wɒtəbəut/ 65
what's on? (= happening) /wɒts 'ɒn/ 52
what's the matter? /wɒts də 'meɪtra(r)/ 16, 21
when (= at what time) /wen/ 62
when (= the time something happened) /wen/ 78
where /'weə(r)/ 62
where are you from? /'weə rə juː 'frəm/ 4
whereabouts /'weərəbaʊts/ 8
which /'wɪtʃ/ 62
while /'weɪl/ 78
while as in for a while /'weɪl/ 22
white /'weɪt/ 18, 27, 28
who /huː/ 62
whose /huːz/ 62
why /'weɪ/ 62
wide /'weɪd/ 70
wife /'wif/ 10

win (= be best or first) /'win/ 49
win (money) /'win/ 20
wind /'wɪnd/ 21
window /'windəʊ/ 41
window seat /'windəʊ sɪt/ 56
windy /'wɪndi/ 21
wine /'wain/ 28
winter /'wɪntə(r)/ 3
wonderful /'wʌndəfl/ 36, 48
wood /'wʊd/ 36
wool as in cotton wool /'wʊl/ 23
word /'wɜːd/ 6
work n /'wɜːk/ 17
work v /'wɜːk/ 42, 45
worried /'wɜːrd/ 16
worry as in don't worry /'wɜː i/ 66
worst /'wɜːst/ 42
worth /'wɜːθ/ 62
wrist /'rɪst/ 12
write /'rɪt/ 43, 59
wrong (= causing problems) /rɒŋ/ 62
wrong (= not right) /rɒŋ/ Starter, 7, 19
wrong number /rɒŋ 'nʌmbə(r)/ 69

year /'jɪə(r)/ 3, 45
yellow /'jeləʊ/ 18
yes, please /'jes plɪz, jes 'plɪz/ 27, 66
yesterday /'jestədɪ/ 75
you too /'juː 'tuː/ 61
young /'jʌŋ/ 13

zero /'zɛərəʊ/ 69
Learn and practise English vocabulary
**Basic** for elementary and pre-intermediate learners

- Learn the words you need to know at each level (Basic, Intermediate, and Advanced)
- See how the words and phrases are used in spoken and written English
- Practise using the vocabulary
- Revise what you've learned
- Improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- Learn the words as preparation for the major exams

Use the CD-ROM to listen to the words, learn how to say them, and practise using them.

It's easy to test yourself. Just use the card inside to 'cover and check'.

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt